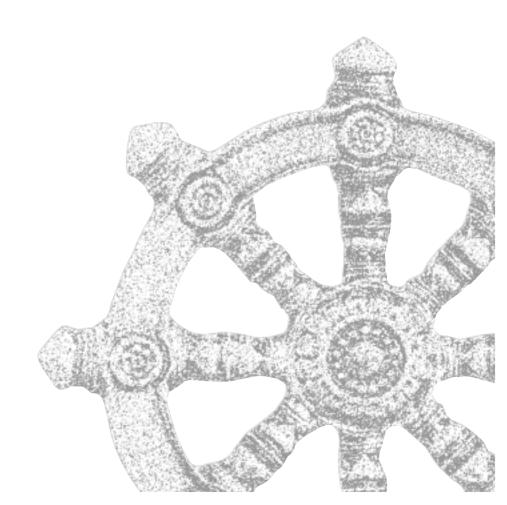


GUIDE TO THE BODHISATTVA'S WAY OF LIFE-PART 1

COURSE

Level 3 of Middle-Way Philosophy (Madhyamika)



Thank you for your interest in the Asian Classics Institute's Correspondence Courses. A complete Formal Study Course consists of audio recordings from the original class series in New York, along with the supporting text materials from each class. The text and audio may be downloaded (see www.world-view.org in the on-line teachings section), or ordered by mail (see the Courses by mail section of the web site).

This Course consists of eleven classes, each of which has approximately two hours of audio, along with corresponding written materials. The audio can be ordered by mail, listened to online as streaming Real Audio, or downloaded onto your computer in mp3 or RA format for playback later. The written materials for this Course are contained in nine on-line files which can be downloaded, printed and assembled into a three-ring binder.

A complete Course binder contains the following sections in this order: a binder cover and spine, an overview of the teacher training program, prayers, a course syllabus, readings, class notes, homework, quizzes, a final examination, answer keys and Tibetan study materials. (The class notes were taken by a student in the original live classes, and you'll need these for reference as what's written on the board isn't always spoken.) For ease of binder assembly, be sure to print the files on three hole paper.

Each class lecture has a corresponding homework, quiz, meditation, and class notes. Most classes have readings, although not every class does. After listening to the audio from a class, the homework, quiz and meditation should be completed for that class before continuing on to the next class. The homework can be completed using your class notes, open book style. The quizzes should be completed from memory only, without the aid of notes or other materials. (A good approach is to look at an answer key *after* you have finished that homework, and to use that answer key to study for that quiz.) A final exam is given at the end of the Course.

You may grade your own papers using the supplied answer keys or, if you wish to do so, you may mail your quizzes, homework and final examination to the Asian Classics Institute to be graded. All of the quiz and final exam questions come from the homework, so the homework answer keys are also used to grade the quizzes and the final exam.

If you use the answer keys to complete your homework or quizzes by copying, please do not mail your papers to the Institute for grading. If you do mail your papers in, upon successfully passing, you will be presented with a certificate of proficiency from the Institute.

If you choose to have your papers graded by the Institute (this is completely optional), please mail all of the homework, quizzes and the final for the Course together – *DO NOT* mail papers from individual classes, or a partially completed Course. Once you have completed the entire Course, mail it to: The Asian Classics Institute, Correspondence Courses, 7055 Juniper Drive, Colorado Springs, CO 80908. Please make a copy of all materials that you send to us, in case they are lost in the mail. **Be sure to provide a self-addressed, stamped envelope of appropriate size and postage to have your papers returned.**

We would like to emphasize finally that, although recordings and written materials can be extremely helpful, it is essential for serious Buddhist practitioners to meet and study directly with a qualified Teacher who can give the necessary guidance and personal instructions of the lineage.

The wisdom of Enlightened Beings has been passed down in an unbroken lineage in these teachings. May you put them into practice in your life, gain every realization, and benefit all. May every goodness grow and spread in all directions right now!

Overview of the Formal Study Course Teacher Training Program

The Six Great Books of Buddhism outlined below are the subject of a geshe's eighteen year program of monastic study. The Asian Classics Institute condenses these Six Great Books of Buddhism into a series of 15 Formal Study Courses.

Book One

Geshe Study Subject: The Perfection of Wisdom (Prajnya Paramita)

School of Buddhism Studied: Beginning Middle-Way (Madhyamika Svatrantika);

also includes some material from Mind-Only (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Text: The Jewel of Realization (Abhisamaya Alamkara)

Written by: Maitreya (the Future Buddha) as related to Master Asanga, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Six years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course II: Buddhist Refuge

Course XV: What the Buddha Really Meant

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, Overview of the Art of Interpretation, Overview of the Twenty Practitioners, Overview of Dependent Origination, Overview of the Form and Formless

Written by: Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Gyalwang Trinley Namgyal (fl. 1850) Typical Subjects: The three kinds of refuge; The wish for enlightenment; What is nirvana?; The proofs for emptiness; Who is Maitreya?; The twelve links of dependent origination in the Wheel of Life; Deep levels of meditation; How do we know when the Buddha was speaking figuratively?; A flow-chart for liberation.

Book Two

Geshe Study Subject: The Middle Way (Madhyamika)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika); also includes some material from the Mind-Only School (Chitta Matra)

Main Root Texts: Entering the Middle Way (Madhyamaka Avatara) and A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Bodhisattva Charya Avatara)

Written by: The first by Master Chandrakirti, circa 650 AD in explanation of Master Nagarjuna, about 200 AD; and the second by Master Shantideva, circa 700 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Four years in a Tibetan monastery **Summarized in ACI Courses:**

Course VI: The Diamond-Cutter Sutra

Course VII: The Vows of the Bodhisattva

Courses X, XI, XII: A Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: Overview of the Middle Way; A Commentary on the Diamond-Cutter Sutra; The String of Shining Jewels, on the Three Sets of Vows; The Point of Entry for Bodhisattvas, a Commentary to the "Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life"

Written by: Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568); Choney Lama Drakpa Shedrup (1675-1748); Geshe Tsewang Samdrup (c. 1830)

Typical Subjects: Emptiness and the Wish for enlightenment; Emptiness and the bodies of a Buddha; The future of the Buddha's teaching; Emptiness and karma; The direct perception of emptiness; Emptiness and paradise; How empty things still work; The root and secondary vows of a bodhisattva; How to keep the vows; How to purify bad deeds; Taking joy; How to fight mental afflictions; The perfection of giving; How anger destroys good karma; The nature of anger; Where bad things really come from; Dealing with jealousy; Quietude; Stopping attachment; On the joys of solitude; Devoting oneself to meditation; On the need to see emptiness; The two realities; The emptiness of feelings; The sliver of Diamond.

Book Three

Geshe Study Subject: Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: The Treasure House of Higher Knowledge (Abhidharma Kosha)

Written by: Master Vasubandhu, circa 350 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course V: How Karma Works

Course VIII: Death and the Realms of Existence

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: *Light on the Path to Freedom, a Commentary to the Treasure House*

Written by: Gyalwa Gendun Drup, the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474)

Typical Subjects: The nature of karma; The role of motivation; The correlation of deeds and their results; How karma is carried; The relative severity of deeds; The three realms of existence; The nature of the *bardo* (intermediate state between birth and death); A description of time and space; The destruction of the world; How to do death meditation

Book Four

Geshe Study Subject: Vowed Morality (Vinaya) School of Buddhism Studied: Detailist (Vaibhashika)

Main Root Text: A Summary of Vowed Morality (Vinaya Sutra)

Written by: Master Gunaprabha, circa 500 AD

Traditional period to cover this subject: Two years in a Tibetan monastery

Overview of the ACI Teacher Training Program

Summarized in ACI Course:

Course IX: The Ethical Life

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Course: *Essence of the Ocean of Discipline; Daymaker--A commentary on the "Essence of the Ocean"*

Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419), Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851) Typical Subjects: The nature of the vows of freedom; Their divisions; The specific vows (note: nuns and monks' vows are presented only to those with ordination); Who can take vows; How vows are lost; The benefits of keeping vows.

Book Five

Geshe Study Subject: Buddhist Logic (Pramana) School of Buddhism Studied: Sutrist (Sautrantika)

Main Root Text: The Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika)

Written by: Master Dharmakirti, circa 650 AD, on Master Dignaga, circa 450 AD Traditional period to cover this subject: Three months per year for 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course IV: The Proof of Future Lives Course XIII: The Art of Reasoning

Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses: The Four Reasonings; Light on the Path to Freedom, An Explanation of the "Commentary on Valid Perception"; Jewel of the True Thought; An Explanation of the Art of Reasoning; An Explanation of the Path of Reasoning; The Collected Topics of the Spiritual Son; The Collected Topics of Rato; A Clear Exposition upon Mind and Mental Functions

Written by: Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432); The First Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyaltsen (1567?-1662); Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk (1928-1997); Master Tutor Purbuchok Jampa Tsultrim Gyatso (1825-1901); Master Ngawang Trashi (c. 1700); Master Chok-hla U-ser (c. 1500)

Typical Subjects: The meaning of valid perception; The nature of omniscience; Proofs for past and future lives; The qualities of a Buddha; Why study the art of reasoning?; The definition of a reason; How to do Buddhist debate; The parts of a logical statement; Cause and effect; The nature of the subject mind; The concept of negatives and positives; The nature of definitions; The concept of time.

Book Six

Geshe Study Subject: The Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim)

School of Buddhism Studied: Advanced Middle Way (Madhyamika Prasangika)

Main Root Text: The Great Book on the Steps to Buddhahood (Lam Rim Chenmo)

Written by: Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419)

Traditional period to cover this subject: Intermittently over a period of 15 years in a Tibetan monastery

Overview of the ACI Teacher Training Program

Summarized in ACI Courses:

Course I: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism

Course III: Applied Meditation

Course XIV: Lojong, Developing the Good Heart

- **Principal monastic textbooks used for ACI Courses:** A Gift of Liberation, Thrust into Our Hands; The Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Commentary on the Principal Teachings of Buddhism; A Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss (Ganden Hlagyama); Preparing for Tantra (The "Source of All My Good" and its Commentary); A Collection of Lojong Texts; Offering of the Mandala; How to Offer the Mandala in Thirty-Seven Parts
- **Written by:** Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (b. 1921); Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941); Master Ngulchu Dharma Bhadra (1772-1851)
- **Typical Subjects:** The Meaning of Rennciation, the Wish for enlightenment, and correct world view; How to do a daily practice; How to meditate; What to meditate on; How to practice at work and other everyday situations; How to offer the mandala; How to practice love and compassion; Brief presentations of the entire path to Enlightenment; How to prepare for the secret teachings.

ञ्जा |सङ्ग्रा | mandel

୲ଽୖ୵ୣ୷ୢୠ୵୕୵ୠୖୄୠୢଌ୶୵ୣ୷୶୵୳୕ୡୄ୵୲

rirab lingshi nyinde gyenpa di,

sangye shingdu mikte ulwar gyi,

|त्र्ज्ञेंगुर्द्रस्य द्या हिर्प्य हेर्नि । | drokun namdak shingla chupar shok.

ाक्षे दे त्यु दु र इ अड़ य मै के हु ह प्य की ।

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

Offering the Mandala

Here is the great Earth, Filled with the smell of incense, Covered with a blanket of flowers,

The Great Mountain, The Four Continents, Wearing a jewel Of the Sun, and Moon.

In my mind I make them The Paradise of a Buddha, And offer it all to You.

By this deed May every living being Experience The Pure World.

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

ञ्जा । भुनवायम् श्वेष्ठा । kyabdro semkye

sangye chudang tsokyi choknam la,

|ธุร:สูธ:จราวราราชาสิ:สูธจะสู:มะติจา jangchub bardu dakni kyabsu chi,

| กรุกาทิสาลิสาลักลากฏิสานนิ กลัร สุมสาฏิสา dakki jinsok gyipay sunam kyi,

प्रज्ञां ता प्रवास्त्र स्थित अद्यास्त्र स्था विष्या प्रवास्त्र स्था विषय स्या विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था विषय स्था वि

Refuge and The Wish

I go for refuge To the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha Until I achieve enlightenment.

By the power Of the goodness that I do In giving and the rest,

May I reach Buddhahood For the sake Of every living being.



| इस्मान प्रतिक्षा हिन्तु । इस्मान प्रतिक्षा हिन्तु । इस्मान हिन्तु । इस्मान

ารณ์รุ:สุมพาพิ:ผิพ:ชั้มพาษักพาผิรา sunam yeshe tsok-dzok shing,

รunam yeshe lejung way,

| द्रमः सः भुः महिषा वर्षेतः धरः विम । । । dampa kunyi topar shok.

Dedication of the Goodness of a Deed

By the goodness Of what I have just done May all beings

Complete the collection Of merit and wisdom,

And thus gain the two Ultimate bodies That merit and wisdom make.



| क्रेंब:य:ब्रु: ब्रेंड: ब्राट्य:क्रुब: देव: क्रेंड

tonpa lame sanggye rinpoche,

ब्रिंच यः त्वः येऽ : ५ यः कें यः रे दः यें के ।

kyoppa lame damchu rinpoche,

विदेशमास्यासेनान्यो वित्तर्भने संस्कृ

drenpa lame gendun rinpoche,

भिन्न निर्मात्र स्त्रीय स्त्रीय निर्मात्र स्त्र स्ताय स्त्रीय

kyabne konchok sumla chupa bul.

A Buddhist Grace

I offer this To the Teacher Higher than any other, The precious Buddha.

I offer this To the protection Higher than any other, The precious Dharma.

I offer this
To the guides
Higher than any other,
The precious Sangha.

I offer this To the places of refuge, To the Three Jewels, Rare and supreme.



The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Level Three of Middle Way Philosophy (Madhyamika)

Course Syllabus

Reading One

Subject: The Author, Structure, and History of the Text

Reading: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life by Master Shantideva (circa

700 AD), with a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) entitled *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious*

Buddhas, folios 1A-3B, 5B-6A.

Reading Two

Subject: The Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment

Reading: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, with commentary from Entry

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 6B-8B.

Reading Three

Subject: How to Make Offerings

Reading: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, with commentary from Entry

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 14B-17B.

Reading Four

Subject: How to Purify Bad Deeds

Reading: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, with commentary from Entry

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 18B-25A.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Course Syllabus

Reading Five

Subject: Rejoicing; Asking the Lamas to Teach and to Stay; How to

Dedicate

Reading: *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life,* with commentary from *Entry*

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 25A-26B.

Reading Six

Subject: Taking Joy

Reading: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, with commentary from Entry

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 28B-29B.

Reading Seven

Subject: How to Fight the Mental Afflictions, Part One

Reading: *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life,* with commentary from *Entry*

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 35A-37A.

Reading Eight

Subject: How to Fight the Mental Afflictions, Part Two; Why the

Perfections are Mental

Reading: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, with commentary from Entry

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 37B-38B, 42B-43B.

Reading Nine

Subject: Awareness

Reading: *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life,* with commentary from *Entry*

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 46A-48B.

Reading Ten

Subject: The Perfections of Giving and Ethical Living

Reading: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, with commentary from Entry

Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas, folios 52A-55A.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading One: Author, Structure, and History of the Text

The following story recounts in brief some of the events in the life of the great bodhisattva Shantideva. It is a paraphrase of sections from the *Life Stories of the Lineage Teachers of the Steps of the Path (Lam-rim bla-ma brgyud-pa'i rnam-thar)* written by Yongdzin Yeshe Gyeltsen (1713-1793), the teacher of the eighth Dalai Lama.

Master Shantideva was born to the west of Bodhgaya, the Seat of the Diamond, in a place called Yulkor Mosang. His father was a king named Armor of Virtue, and his mother was said to be an emanation of Vajra Yogini, the Angel of Diamond. He was able to choose the details of his birth, and when he was born he was given the name Armor of Peace. In his childhood he had all the favorable conditions that he needed, and from his earliest age he revealed himself to be a master of the traditional philosophical and other sciences. When he was six years old he met a great practitioner of the secret teachings, and received an initiation and a practice for reaching the enlightened being named Manjushri, or Gentle Voice. As a child he made great efforts in this practice, doing its meditations and reciting its secret words, and was soon able to meet Gentle Voice himself. After meeting this holy being, Master Shantideva was able to receive many teachings from him directly.

When his father the King passed away, all the people of the land requested Prince Shantideva to be King. Because he had practiced the bodhisattva path in many previous lives, he had no desire to live a life of royalty, but so as not to upset the people he agreed. The night before his crowning ceremony though he had a dream. In the dream he saw Gentle Voice sitting on the King's throne, and He said, "Son, this is my seat and I am your Teacher. It would be improper for us to sit on the same seat." Upon waking he realized that it was wrong for him to enjoy the pleasures of owning a kingdom, and he ran away.

Master Shantideva first went to Nalandra Monastery where he met the supreme leader of all the learned scholars there. His name was Angel of Virtue, and from this teacher he took the commitment to leave the home life. It also was from this master that he received the name Shantideva, which means "Angel of Peace." At the monastery he served his preceptor well, studied the three collections of scripture, and became a great scholar. He continued to receive many teachings from Gentle Voice himself, and was able to grasp the meaning of all the Buddha's teachings, both open and secret. He eliminated all the different kinds of distraction, both inner and outer, and with this incredible focus of mind he reached a very high spiritual level. He then composed the works entitled the Compendium of Trainings, the Compendium of the Sutras, and other books which describe the amazingly powerful and effective way of the life of a bodhisattva. Master Shantideva perfected within himself the three characteristics of a great Buddhist master—teaching, debating, and writing—and continued to rise up all the spiritual levels and paths. He achieved the ability to remember everything he had ever been taught, the ability to perform miracles effortlessly, and incredible clairvoyance; thus he became a god among bodhisattvas.

This was his inner life, but to the eyes of impure people Shantideva seemed to be interested in only three things: eating, sleeping, and going to the toilet. He thus became known by the name Bhusuku, which means "Mister Three Thoughts." Because the only fitting activity for a man who has left the home life is to involve himself in teaching, some of the monks who could not see who he really was perceived Master Shantideva as someone who was just living off the kindness of the laypeople, and decided that they should expel him from the monastery. They asked him to recite a scripture from memory before a gathering of the monastery, hoping that their request would cause him to decide to leave on his own. He answered them by saying, "How could someone like me ever be able to recite scripture?" and declined. However they insisted that he do so, and eventually he agreed.

The entire monastery was then invited to this gathering, and a very high throne was set up, one without any stairs—so there was no way for anyone to climb atop it. But when the bodhisattva Shantideva reached the front of the throne, he touched it gently, and without the slightest effort he appeared sitting on top of it. He then asked and said, "Would you like me to recite something you have heard before, or something which you have never heard?" The assembly asked that he recite something that they had not heard before, and so he began to recite that book which we call the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life.* He began at the very beginning of the text, and by the time he had gotten about a third of the way through the ninth chapter he began to rise up into the sky. He rose higher and higher, and it seemed as though the sky and his knowledge were pitted in competition, until he could no longer be seen at all, only heard. Then he totally disappeared.

Later on some of the monks who had clairvoyance of the ear, and others who were masters of total recall, pieced the whole book together. The group who were from Kashmir said that it had nine chapters, and the group from central India said it had ten. People then began to get curious about two of his other books which were mentioned in the fifth chapter of the *Guide*, and so they sent two monks to the place where Master Shantideva was living. They travelled to a stupa in the south of India called Pelyun Chen to invite him to come back to Nalandra. The master refused to come, but he did tell them that the people from central India were correct, and that the two books they sought could be found written in tiny letters hidden in the rafters of his old room at the monastery. He then gave these monks a complete explanation of the both the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* and the *Compendium of Trainings*.

Later Master Shantideva was wondering what he could do to help others, and so he decided to check with his clairvoyance. He saw in the east a great many people whose lives were disturbed by a terrible dispute and, seeing that he could help, set off in their direction. While he was there he acted as the opponent of the great argument maker who was causing all the trouble, and with his great powers he was able to bring everyone back together.

He then thought to himself, "What further could I do to benefit people?" The idea then came to him that he should travel to the kingdom of Magada in order to help the people living there who had fallen into the chasm of wrong views. When he arrived, he found a great many people who had extremely weird wrong views, and he decided to stay with them for some time. One day, due to his extraordinary power and to the purity of the prayers these people had made in their past lives, there occurred an enormous blizzard. The storm lasted for seven days, and the community ran out of food and drink. They began to go crazy, and decided that whoever was able to come up with something to eat and drink would become their leader. The bodhisattva Shantideva was miraculously able to fill a single alms bowl with rice, and from it fed everybody in the community. As their leader he was then able to demolish their wrong views, and lead them into the Buddha's teachings.

Master Shantideva next checked with his clairvoyance to see who else needed help. He saw many people suffering from a famine, in desperate need of help, and thousands about to die. He provided these people with sustenance, taught them the teachings of the Buddha, and thus brought them to happiness.

Then the great bodhisattva thought to himself, "What could I do to help the teachings of the Buddha?" He saw that if he were to assist a certain king it would aid many people. He journeyed to the crossroads near his palace, and began to assess the situation. He found a great crowd of mighty, but merciless people. There were a lot of them gathered already, and many others like them on their way. These people were aware of the king's great wealth, and this fact was causing the king much distress. He thought that if he were to use all of

his wealth to pay off these people, then having obtained the kingdom would be of no point; but also that if he did not, then they would surely separate his mind from his body. Master Shantideva took a liking to the king, and arranged to be his bodyguard. Because he had limitless power and might, he was able to overpower all of the evil people, and put the king and his people at ease. During all this time Master Shantideva had no weapon other than a single wooden sword, a sword resembling the sword of Gentle Voice.

The whole kingdom began to develop great faith and respect for Master Shantideva, and made many offerings to him. But there was one man who was very jealous of him, and could not bear all of his success. He went to the king and told him that Master Shantideva was a devious man. He told the king that Shantideva had nothing more then a wooden sword, and that he would never be able to protect him if anything happened. He said to the king, "This man is a deceiving you. Even his sword is nothing more than wood, and so he could never be able to guard your body"; and advised the king to investigate. The king became angered, went to Master Shantideva, and told him to take his sword out of its scabbard. The bodhisattva replied saying, "Your Highness will be hurt if I do so," but the king told him to do it anyway, whether it hurt him or not. Master Shantideva then said to him, "I agree then to take it out, but I advise Your Highness to cover one of your eyes. The king covered one eye as instructed, and when the great bodhisattva pulled out the sword, it blazed with such a light that the king's exposed eye was blinded. The King apologized, took refuge in Master Shantideva, and entered into the teachings of the Buddha.

After this Master Shantideva thought to himself, "What next can I do to be of help to others?" He checked with his clairvoyance, and saw there were many non-Buddhists who opposed the Teachings and needed to be subdued. He went to where they lived in the south, and dressed himself as a beggar. One day a servant of the King saw him and noticed that drops of water which touched his body instantly began to boil.

There was a non-Buddhist teacher living in this land who decided that he wanted to compete with a Buddhist in miraculous powers. He made a deal with the king that whoever lost this competition would have to convert to the other's religion, and that the winner could burn all of the monasteries and books of the loser's religion. The King could find no one of the Buddhist community who would agree to these conditions, and he grieved. Then the servant who had seen the miracle with Master Shantideva told him about it. The King sent out messengers to seek him, and to beg for his help in defeating the non-Buddhist teacher.

The bodhisattva Shantideva told them that he would be able to help, and that they should prepare a large bowl of water, two bolts of cloth, and a fire. On the day of the competition the whole kingdom gathered, and a throne was

prepared for the King. The two opponents began their debates, and because of the power of Master Shantideva's reasoning and scriptural knowledge, his opponent was unable to even respond. Because of this he thought he'd try to win with his miraculous powers instead, and so he began to draw the secret world of a powerful Hindu god in the sky. But before he had finished drawing even its eastern side, the bodhisattva Shantideva went into a deep meditation on the element of wind and brought about a great storm which began to tear apart the entire area.

The King, Queen, and the others assembled ran for cover, and the non-Buddhist teacher and his secret world were thrown about in every direction, like sparrows caught in a hurricane. A great darkness descended upon all the land, and Master Shantideva sent rays of light out from a spot between his eyes to light the way for the King and the Queen. Their clothes had been ripped off and they were covered in dust, so the great bodhisattva bathed them in the water from the bowl, dressed them in the cloth, and put them near the fire, where they could warm themselves.

Master Shantideva's activities were exclusively dedicated to the benefit of living beings, and to helping the Buddha's teachings. Everything he did was meant to express the truth of the saying: "Men are like the mango fruit. Sometimes they look ripe on the outside, but are not ripe on the inside. Others are ripe on the inside, but don't look ripe on the outside. Some look and are ripe both inside and out, and others that don't look ripe truly are not." For people like us who haven't seen emptiness directly, it is very difficult to judge another's mind. Generally speaking then we should never allow ourselves to think that anyone at all has any bad qualities, and we should realize more specifically that criticizing anyone who has entered the Buddha's teachings is like playing near a pit of embers concealed in ash. It is important that we not criticize other people, and to try to see all things as pure. It is to express this fact that Master Shantideva lived the way that he did.

He also taught us by example many other lessons. Never be satisfied with wrong or partial paths. Train yourself in paths which are complete. Practice what is taught in this bodhisattva's books. If you take Gentle Voice as your personal Angel, you will be able to achieve all wonderful qualities. It isn't fitting to put any faith in books which can't bring you to total enlightenment. The only entry point for those who wish for freedom is the teachings of Enlightened Beings. So if you wish to practice the teachings of the steps of the path to enlightenment, make supplication to this great bodhisattva; and learn about, contemplate, and meditate on his words.

The following selections are taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chub-sems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

म्। विट.क्य.मुभम्।रतपु.मुँर.त.ज.यहया.तपु.मम्।यप्रम्यायप्रम्याःम्यायप्रमायः

Herein contained is the Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddha a commentary upon the Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life.

<u>।इ.पर्व्य.रभाताञ्चयोद्याङ्ग.कुय.त्त्र्य.त.क्य.त.क्यद्याञ्ची,ख्यद्य.तायीद्यात्यक्तात्त्री</u>

With deep respect I bow down to the feet of the revered ones, the holy ones, to those who possess great compassion!

|यार.यो.भयिष.त.धूर्य.त.योष.चर.सक्ष्य.रत्त्रयात्र.धे।

प्रश्चतः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः । स्ट्रिक्त्याः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्तः स्ट्रिक्त

बियः त्याः में स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः त्याः स्थाः स्

To those whose knowledge has eliminated all bad qualities And rises high in the sky of the ether of phenomena As a sun disc of the four holy bodies Blazing with the glory of the marks and signs;

To those who by their great compassion, Beam out to an endless number of beings The immaculate light rays of holy speech Which possesses sixty wonderful qualities; To those who dispel the darkness Of infinite living creatures Spontaneously in an unbroken stream Of pure and holy activities;

With great respect I bow down to them, To the feet of the Lords of the Able, To my Lamas, to all great beings, And to He who is of Gentle Voice.

In accordance with the positions
Which the great masters hold to be true,
I shall write about the meaning of the words
In the *Guide to the Way of Holy Children*So that it may always be familiar to me
In the string of my future lives,
And with the thought that it may also be helpful
To others who share such an interest.

| प्रत्यास्त्रीयाः प्रत्याः प्रत्यः प्रत्याः प्रत्याः प्रत्यः प

Those of you who are bound by the noose Of holding wrong views as supreme Who say you needn't realize profound suchness In order to reach lower enlightenments:

Listen carefully all of you people Who teach this mistaken position!

First, the Lord of the Able Ones developed the wish to achieve supreme enlightenment. Then over many countless eons he worked to complete the two collections [of goodness and of wisdom] by carrying out the activities of giving and the other perfections. Finally he reached total enlightenment and turned the wheel of the Dharma in three stages.

The Buddha first turned the wheel by teaching the Four Truths of Realization three times through in twelve different aspects. From this teaching on the Four Truths alone, some disciples who belonged to the class of Listeners and whose minds were ripe grasped the meaning of dependent origination, free from the extreme of thinking of things as self-existent. It has been explained by the savior Nagarjuna in his treatises, and by Master Chandrakirti in his work on the *Commentary on the Sixty Verses on Reasoning*, that the scriptures of the

Lower Way even describe explicitly the most subtle form of selflessness on many occasions. The second time the Buddha turned the wheel he taught in great detail about the selflessness of both the person and phenomena as is found in the brief, medium-length and extensive sutras on the Perfection of Wisdom, as well as in other works. The third time he turned the wheel he gave the teaching of the Cycle of No Return which deals extensively with the subject of method.

योट-क्षित्र-विक्रां श्री त्यत्र-स्वर्ध्याः स्वित्र-स्वर्धाः योहत्र-त्याः विविद्याः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्धः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्

What I am going to explain is the holy *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* which, in general, comments upon the true intent of all the speech of the Buddhas, the highest of all spoken word. More particularly, however, this book thoroughly explains the true intent of the scriptures of the Greater Way. In so doing, it establishes in detail how every instance of the Buddhas' speech is a part of a path to reach enlightenment which can be put into practice by any particular person who belongs to the family of the Greater Way.

पदः श्चें, यश्चे ह्या ता हिर्त्तर ह्या क्षेत्र त्या ह्या का स्वा क्षेत्र त्या हिर्त्त का ह्या का स्व का स्

The author of this treatise is that master and realized being, Shantideva, who had perfectly understood the true meaning of every instance of the highest form of the spoken word. Master Shantideva was possessed of the great compassion which treasures others more than oneself, and he totally lost himself to helping others and making them happy; he was completely free of the tendency of thinking only of his own happiness. More specifically, he was a being who succeeded in employing the activities of extreme non-

conceptualization found in the Unsurpassable group of secret teachings, and so brought the path of the Greater Way to its ultimate conclusion.

ग्रीन्त्रा वर्णुनःग्रीस्य मलुनःमिन्त्रा वहमामीन्त्रात्रावहमायायायली सर्ध्यः भ्रीन्त्रा वर्णुनःग्रीस्य मलुनःमिन्त्रा वहमामीन्त्रान्तायायस्यायली सर्ध्यः

The book which he wrote, the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life*, has four major sections: the meaning of the title, the translator's obeisance, the meaning of the body of the text, and some concluding remarks.

Meaning of the Title

The title of this book in Sanskrit, one of the four great languages of ancient India, is *Bodhisattvacharyavatara*. The meaning of this title can be explained in the following way. The word *bodhi* [*jang-chub* in Tibetan] means "enlightenment," the word *sattva* [*sempa*] means "warrior," *charya* [*chupa*] means "activities," and *avatara* [*jukpa*] means "to enter."

Translator's Obeisance

וְקאִינִיֹקרִינִוֹן

Here begins the first bampo:

I bow down to all Buddhas and bodhisattvas!

यविर्यं म्यान्त्रः स्वान्यः स

The purpose of including the line which contains the words "Buddhas and..." is to indicate which section of the scriptures this book is included into. This involves preventing obstacles to the translation, and serves to help you realize that even through this is a commentary upon all of the collections of scripture, it focuses mainly upon the sutra collection.

The words which indicate the beginning of the first *bampo*, or major textual division, are easy to understand, and thus require no commentary.

Meaning of the Body of the Text

I will explain the meaning of the body of the text in two main parts: first will be an explanation of the preliminaries which precede an explanation of the steps of the path of the greater way, and then the actual explanation of the steps themselves.

The preliminaries to the actual explanation will be in three sections: Master Shantideva's offering of praise, his pledge to compose the work, and then finally words to prevent pride arising, along with the reasons why he takes joy in composing this work.

The offering of praise can be explained in three parts: its purpose, what it includes, and its wording itself. It begins as follows:

I bow down with great respect To Those Who Have Gone to Well-Being— Those who possess the Dharma Body—

And to all of their sons and daughters, And all others worthy of prostration!

क्र्याकाकी स्वास्त्र त्याँचात्र्। स्वास्त्र त्यां त्यात्र त्या त्यात्र त्यात्य त्यात्

The reason why Shantideva here expresses the wonderful spiritual qualities of an extraordinary being, and why he goes for refuge, is so that other people will understand that he is himself a holy person. Another reason he does so is to prevent any obstacles which may come up as he is writing this book, or in any of his other endeavors. His ultimate purpose is that he may achieve definite good, and that by following in his footsteps other disciples will also be able to achieve every single good thing that there is.

This verse shows us that Master Shantideva in bowing down to the Three Jewels, as well as to everyone else who is worthy of being prostrated to.

श्चान्नान्ता चित्रविन्नान्त्रः विद्यान्त्रवाक्षेत्रः प्रद्रा विवान्नान्त्रः विद्यान्त्रः विद्यान्त्रः विद्यान्यः विद्यान्त्रः विद्यान्त्रः विद्यान्त्रः विद्यान्यः व

The Sanskrit word *Sugata* [Those Who have Gone to Well-Being] can be explained in two ways. We can explain it in reference to either the things which an Enlightened Being has eliminated, or in reference to the things which he or she has realized.

First I will explain it in terms of that excellent virtue an Enlightened Being possess of having totally eliminated every single bad quality there is. Because an Enlightened Being has completely cleaned Himself of all the obstacles which are related to bad thoughts, we can say that he has *gone well*, or beautifully, and is like someone who has an *well*-formed body. Because he will never have to return back to this cycle of suffering life by force of things poisoned with the afflictions of the mind, we can say that he has *gone* like someone who has been completely cured, or made *well*, from an illness. And because he has totally removed all of those kinds of ignorance which are not related to the mental afflictions, we can say that he has totally *gone* like a vase which is *well*-filled. It is in this way that we call such a being One Who Has Gone to Well-Being. We say "well-being" to refer to the different qualities described above with the word "well", and we say "gone" to indicate that these beings have gone to the nature which embodies those very qualities.

र्मित्राश्चार्यः न्यान्यत्वेतः नुष्टेशः यसः विनः यसः नुष्टाः यसः विकायते । विकायते ।

Using the word "well" in these three different ways serves also to distinguish Those Who Have Gone to Well-Being respectively from non-Buddhists who have freed themselves of desire; from stream-enterers, once-returners, etc.; and from lower foe-destroyers.

तत्। १८.८या.युश्च.यीट.५श.त.युष्टे.यीट.चया.योश्च्यायाश्च्यायाश्च्यायाश्च्यायाः विद्यायायाः विद्यायाः विद्यायः विद्यायाः विद्यायः विद्या

Now, I will explain "Sugata" in terms of an Enlightened Being having perfected every single realization there is. Such a being has *gone well* in the sense that His knowledge has directly perceived the suchness of the two kinds of lack of self-nature, that His knowledge is firm, and that His knowledge is total. These qualities of His knowledge respectively indicate how such a being is exceedingly higher then the three groups of practitioners mentioned above.

|देश'सदस'क्कुश'दर्गेद'सकेंग'य'पर्सेद'य'पसूद'रें।

This is Master Shantideva's praise of the Buddha Jewel.

|यक्षिरायातायक्षिर्य श्रीतः इसायवियान्ता श्राश्रीतः र्ने स्वतः यदी

The second section, the actual explanation of this book, is in two parts. First will be a presentation of the overall structure of the book, and then an explanation of each individual part.

त्रभाग्नीः देशन्यार्द्द्रभाग्यत्यत्रभाग्यत्यत्यत्रभाग्यत्यत्रभाग्यत्यत्यत्यत्रभाग्यत्यस्यत्यत्यसम्यत्

This book presents, in their entirety, each one of the steps of the path to enlightenment. It begins by telling you the way to practice the contemplations for people of lesser and medium capacity as an adjunct to practicing the contemplations for people of great capacity. Then it goes on to teach you how to develop the wish to achieve supreme enlightenment, and how—after you have developed that wish—you should train yourself in the perfection of giving, along with the other five perfections.

ष्ट्-त्यून्यी,यममःस्त्रीत्यमःस्यात्मः तस्याःमः वस्याःमःस्याः वस्यमः स्त्रीत्यः स्त्राः स्त्रीयः स्त्राः स्त्रीयः स्त्राः स्

The first chapter explains how, in the beginning, you must increase your joyful energy to its very highest by thoroughly contemplating the benefits which come from developing the wish to achieve supreme enlightenment. This chapter also touches upon the way you should practice, as an adjunct, the contemplations for people of lesser and medium capacity.

You must go about developing the wish to achieve supreme enlightenment, that wish whose very root is love and compassion, in the same way that you would go about preparing to welcome a King who ruled the entire world by cleaning your house, and so on. You will be able to acquire this wish by purifying all of the factors which obstruct your spiritual realizations, and gathering together the power of good deeds which promote them. These two subjects are covered respectively in the second and third chapters.

The fourth chapter teaches you why you must be careful once you have developed the wish, so that the good energy you have amassed from training yourself in the activities of a bodhisattva does not degenerate.

The chapters which follow teach you how to put the six perfections into practice. With regard to this, the fifth chapter is devoted to an extensive presentation of how to train yourself to live an ethical life through maintaining your mindfulness and awareness, and the next four chapters are successively devoted to how to train yourself in not getting angry, joyfully doing good deeds, meditative concentration, and wisdom.

The tenth chapter explains in detail how you can learn that attitude which wants to give away to others your own body, all of your possessions, along with every good thing you've ever done. And it teaches you how to sweeten your acts of giving through dedication. Although the tenth chapter treats with great thoroughness how it is that you should train yourself in the perfection of giving, this subject is also taught on other occasions, such as in the chapter

on how to develop the wish for enlightenment. The subject of what it is to be a Buddha, which is the final result, is treated in the ninth chapter.

The names of the ten chapters of the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* are as follows:

I. Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment

II. Purifying Bad Deeds

III. Acquiring the Wish for Enlightenment

IV. Using Carefulness

V. Guarding Awareness

VI. Not Getting Angry

VII. Joyous Effort

VIII. Meditative Concentration



IX. Wisdom



X. Dedication

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Two: The Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chubsems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

The second part [the more detailed contemplation upon the benefits of the wish for enlightenment] has four divisions: an explanation of the benefits of the wish for enlightenment, identifying just what the wish for enlightenment is, a presentation of the reasons why these benefits occur with the wish, and words in praise of persons who are practicing the wish.

The first of these divisions has three sections of its own: a description of how the wish has the power to destroy all bad deeds and to accomplish all good deeds; how those who achieve the wish attain both an exceptional name, as well as the point of the name; and metaphors which are used to explain the benefits.

दिरास्तायाश्वर्या श्रेयायाक्षेत्रा श्रेयायाके वास्त्रीया स्थाया विकास स्थाया विकास स्थाया विकास स्थाया विकास स

The first of these sections has three of its own: how the wish has the power to destroy great bad deeds; how it has the power to accomplish the highest form of happiness; and how it has the power to bring about anything you might ever wish for.

। শ্বীনান শ্বীন শ্বীন

What kind of goodness could there ever be Other than the wish for total enlightenment That could overwhelm those negative deeds Of dreadful and awesome strength?

Making great efforts to practice the two forms of the wish for enlightenment is something which is very right to do. This is because we have committed negative deeds of dreadful strength, deeds that would cause us to be born into the hells, or the like. And what kind of goodness could there ever be, other than the wish for total enlightenment, that could overwhelm them? The answer is that there is no such other goodness.

The main point being mentioned here is not the fact that the ultimate form of the wish has the power to eliminate the seeds for spiritual obstacles. The intent rather is to indicate the benefit of the wish where, in its "deceptive" form, the wish functions to clear away those causes already created which would take one to the births of misery, and also functions to prevent the continued creation of these causes in the future.

| श्वीय: २ यट: इस्र अ: ग्रीका: यदी: क्षेट: यद : यदा : या डीया शा

The Lords among Victors contemplated the question For many millions of years and saw That this alone could be of benefit.

देशकाग्रीकानिटाक्षेत्राग्री,शृश्यकानम्बेर्यात्यात्वयदात्तरः सूच्यात्वात्यात्वयः व्यात्त्रप्तयः व्यात्त्रपत्तः व्यात्त्रपत्त्रपत्तः व्यात्त्रपत्तः व्यात्तः व्यात्त्रपत्तः व्यात्तः व्यात्

Again we can say that making efforts to practice the wish is something which is very right to do. This is because *the Lords among Victors have* considered and *contemplated, for many* "countless" periods of *millions of years* each, *the question of what could be of benefit to,* or a way to achieve the ends of, all living beings. And what they *saw was that this* wish for enlightenment *alone* would be so.

|यर्नेशकेंग्रायरे:ख्र्याकेंर्ने केंद्राक्ष्य सम्बन्धीय|

It is this wish which allows a limitless Mass of sentient kind to attain The highest form of happiness, with ease.

It is this wish for enlightenment which is like a special seed, one that has the power which allows a limitless number of living beings, a great mass of sentient kind, to attain the highest form of happiness. And it allows them to do so with ease, with perfect ease—that is, without having to undertake any such difficult spiritual practices as undertaking the life of a cave-dwelling yogi. It's just as the lines say which go,

What person with any intelligence at all Would lose heart in going easily to ease?

विट क्वा शेशश्री देवा मुंद्रा विद्या विद्या

Those who hope to smash the thousand pains Of the cycle of life, or to solve The unhappiness of every living being, Or bring them to the many thousand forms Of happiness, must never give up This very wish for enlightenment.

And we can say once more that it is very right to practice this very wish, for it is the highest means of helping all living things, both oneself and all others. This is because there is no higher method for persons of any level, whether you are one of those who is practicing the attitude of those of medium capacity, and who thus hopes to smash the thousand pains of the cycle of life as they exist within your own being; or whether you are one of those who is practicing the attitude of those of greater capacity—who hopes to solve the unhappiness of absolutely every living being, or to bring them to the many thousand forms of happiness, meaning the happiness of the higher realms and definite good. These persons then must strive to develop this very wish for enlightenment, and never give it up, which is to say, never let it degenerate once one has succeeded in developing it.

विद्याः हेत् स्थान्य स्थान्य

Once they've succeeded in developing
The wish for enlightenment, then even
Those miserable beings chained in the prison
Of cyclic life are in an instant referred to
By Those Gone to Bliss as their very own
Daughters or sons, and are worthy to be bowed to
By the entire world, of men and gods.

होर.र्र्। हेब.त.केश्चर.पश्चरा.घ्रा.श्चरा.श्चर्यं.हों.र.प.२८.। तिया.चे.पर.प्र्यातद्व.योश्चरा.घेर.पर.वर्. पट्र.पर.योश्चरा.घेश्चरा.घेश्चरा.घेर्यं.घेर्यं.चेश्चर.घेर्यं.घेर्यं.घेर्यं.घेर.पर.वर्. पट्र.पर.योश्चरा.घेश्चरा.घेर्यं.घ

And again we can say that it is a very right thing to make great efforts in developing the wish for enlightenment, for the following reasons. Suppose that any person *succeeds in developing the wish for enlightenment*, in either the form of a prayer or activity itself. Within the very next *instant* after doing so they are given an exceptional name, for *Those Gone to Bliss* then *refer to them as their very own daughters or sons*. They also attain the point of this name, which is that they become *worthy to be bowed to*, worthy to have *the entire world*, of both *men and gods*, clasp their hands at their breasts and prostrate to them.

वयात्तः देशकाःग्रीकाःग्रीटः श्रेषकाः चर्मीटः वः देः सावयाः तवः त्येतः देः दयाः व्याः तवः त्येतः व्याः त्येतः व स्वः तः साधाः त्येवः ते। यावाः कृषः त्यीः द्याः द्याः त्याः तवः त्येतः त्याः व्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्य व्याः तः देशकाःग्रीकाःग्रीटः श्रेषकाः तम्भीटः वः देः सावयाः तवः त्येतः त्याः विवाः व्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्य

And it is not the case that only those great bodhisattvas residing at high levels obtain these benefits, because *even those miserable beings chained* by their mental afflictions and past deeds *in the prison of cyclic life* also reap these same benefits in the very next instant after succeeding in developing the wish.

कृयान्यः स्वायाः स्वायः स्वरं स्वयः स्वरं स्वरं

Here is the third part, where metaphors are used to explain the benefits of the wish. There are six such metaphors, to express the following: changing the inferior to the supreme; being difficult to find and very precious; giving unending results and continually increasing; being able to protect one from some great fear; smashing bad deeds without any difficulty at all; and finally, being described as beneficial in the sutras.

विट्युत्रःश्रेस्रश्चेत्रः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः विद्यः स्वरः स्

Keep this thing called the "wish for enlightenment"
As firmly as you can, for like
The highest form of alchemical elixir
It transforms this filthy body you've taken
To the holy form of a Victorious One,
Of immeasurable value beyond all value.

त्र-विश्वात्ताः क्षेत्र-क्षित्र-कष्त्र-कष्तिः क्षित्र-कष्तिः क्षित्र-कष्तिः क्षित्र-कष्तिः कष्तिः कष्

मुत्यापदे भुः रेद केद रेद बर केट पर अध्यादे हिट ग्रीयाप शुर प्राप्त दि

Once you have contemplated its benefits, then you are to keep—that is, you must keep—this thing called the "wish for enlightenment" as firmly as you can: find it, and then prevent it from ever lessening. This is because it is like the highest form of alchemical elixir, the kind where you need only a single gram of the elixir to change a thousand grams of iron into gold. And this is so because with the wish, and with it alone, you can transform this filthy body you've taken on—a body which is filthy both in the sense of what has brought it about, and from the point of view of the stuff from which it is made—into the holy form of a Victorious One, of immeasurable value beyond all value.

यश्चित्रायायश्चरायो नृत्याक्ष्यायो नृत्याक्ष्यायाय्ये । स्वार्थित्रायाय्ये । स्वार्थित्यायाय्ये । स्वार्थित्यायाय्ये । स्वार्थित्याय्ये । स्वार्थित्यय्ये । स्वार्ये । स्वार्थित्यय्ये । स्वार्थित्यय्ये । स्वार्ये । स्वार्थित्यय्ये । स्वार्ये । स्व

This is an abbreviated presentation of the benefits of the wish explained in the scripture known as *Stalks in Array*, where it uses the metaphor of that kind of quicksilver known as "goldmaker," where you can use a single gram of the elixir to transform a thousand grams of iron into gold.

Those who seek to be free of the state
Of living beings should keep, well and firm,
This precious jewel, the wish for enlightenment,
For that single captain of living kind
Has searched at length with a state of mind
Beyond all limit, and found it to be of great value.

Those who seek to be free of the state of living beings—that is, who seek to be free of each and every one of the troubles of this cycle of life—should seek to develop, well, the wish for enlightenment, and then keep it firm, without ever lessening, for it is like the king among the lords of all precious jewels. That single and matchless captain of living kind, the Buddha, is like a master ship captain who guides the merchants of old to the Isle of Jewels. He and all those beings who possess the state of mind beyond all limit—unlimited wisdom—have searched at length, very thoroughly, to find what it is that would be the highest method of clearing away all the poverty of living kind. And they have found that the wish, and only it, is of great value; that is, they have seen that it is a method of great rarity and benefit.

विस्यक्षास्य विद्युक्ष स्वर्थाः स्वर्थाः स्वर्थाः स्वर्धाः विद्युक्षः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वरं

All other good deeds are like the plantain tree, That gives its fruits and always dies away; The wish for enlightenment though is an evergreen That never dies by giving its fruits, But rather ever increases.

तर रुवाबाही येट क्या ग्री श्रम्भा ग्रीका साम्राम्य स्तर रेवी या याल्य ग्रीय स्तर ये विदायित स्तर स्तर स्वाया प्रमाणका ग्रीय स्तर स्वाया प्रमाणका ग्रीय स्तर स्वाया प्रमाणका ग्रीय स्तर स्वाया प्रमाणका स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्वाया स्व

વર્શન ત્રામાં કો. ત્રેર. ત્ર્યાર ત્રામાં ત્રામાં ત્રામાં ત્રામાં કો. ત્રેર. ત્રામાં ત્રામા ત્રામા ત્રામા ત્રામા ત્રામા ત્રામા ત્રામાં ત્રામા ત્રામા ત્રામા ત્રામા ત્

Practicing the wish for enlightenment is moreover a right thing to do for those who hope to see their good deeds never die, but increase ever further. This is because all other good deeds, meaning those that are not imbued by this wish, are like the plantain tree: they give their fruits and, once they have done so, it is always the case that their ability to produce further fruits dies away. The wish for enlightenment though is an evergreen: it is like a wish-giving tree, in that it never dies by giving its fruits, but rather ever increases, higher and higher.

ग्रीःश्चेरःस्याविष्याचीःतरः न्याः स्वाधित्याः विष्याः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधितः स्वाधित्याः स्वाधितः स्वाधितः स्वाधितः स्वाधितः स्वाधितः स्वाधितः स्वाधितः

As the Sutra Taught by Inexhaustible Understanding states,

A drop of water which falls into the great sea never disappears, even in the period of an eon of millions of years. Virtues which have been dedicated to enlightenment are just the same: they never disappear before the state of perfect enlightenment is achieved.

A person may have committed deeds
That are dreadful in the extreme, and yet
Anyone who relies on this can be freed
From all of them in an instant, as though they relied
On a warrior to save them from some horrible fear.
Why then would those who live with care
Not choose to rely upon this very wish?

यहेब.बबा.टब.वर्ग्रेव.वह्माबायादी.रमालीर.व्यामीबार्च्स्यायादी.यम्बेर.यम्

For what reason, why, would those who live with care (meaning those who have gladly taken it upon themselves to master the way of life relating to the practice of the wish for enlightenment) not rely upon this very wish? It would be right for them to do so, for the following reason. A person may have committed deeds that are dreadful in the extreme, may have done things to hurt the Three Jewels, or else committed one of the immediate deeds or something similar, and yet they can be freed from all the fears of the lower realms in an instant, if they rely on this wish for enlightenment. This is because it is like relying on a warrior to save oneself from some horrible fear that one might meet with while travelling along some road.

|देश.वे.रेश.भवदु.श्र.चक्षेव.क्षेय.क्षेय.स्था

It burns with certainty, in an instant, Even the greatest of bad deeds, as if it were The fire that comes at the end of time.

त्रमाश्ची श्रम्भागः विद्यान्त स्त्रीत्र विद्यान स्त्रीत् स्त्रमाणि स्त्रमाण

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Two

This wish for enlightenment has a tremendous ability to destroy the effects of bad deeds. It is as though this wish were the fire that comes at the end of time, meaning at the end of the eon of destruction—the fire that destroys the entire physical world from the first meditation level on down. This is because the wish can burn, with certainty, and in a single instant, even the greatest of bad deeds: those deeds which would force one into a birth in the hells.

If the wish, by the way, has the power to destroy even those kinds of karma which are certain to produce an experience, then there is no need to say that it has the ability to do so with those types of karma which are not certain to produce an experience. Those of the Greater Vehicle can utilize an act of purification, in which all four of the forces of purification are present, in order to purify themselves of the expected ripening of those types of karma which are certain to produce an experience. The expression "certain to produce an experience" then refers to those kinds of karma which are proven, through many cases of scriptural authority and also through reasoning, to be certain to produce an experience *unless one practices the appropriate antidote* to their power.

। नुस्रम् स्रोत् द्वार्याः पुरस्य । स्रोत् । स्रोत् । स्रोत्य । स्रोत् । स्रोत् । स्रोत् । स्रोत् । स्रोत् । स्

The benefits of this wish, beyond all reckoning, Were spoken to Sudana by the Gentle Protector, The One who Possesses Wisdom.

त्र-त्यवर्त्तातुः द्वीर-र्ज्ञा श्रेश्वर्यात्रा श्रेश्वर्यात्रा स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्

The benefits of the wish for enlightenment, as described above, are certain to occur if you succeed in developing it. This is because the benefits of this wish, and its praises, which are beyond all reckoning, really are just as they were spoken to the younger bodhisattva Sudana, in the sutra called Stalks in Array, by the bodhisattva who is the Gentle Protector, the One Who Possesses Wisdom.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Two

श्चिशःक्चिःक्चिरः विद्रि । क्ष्रिंशः श्री । विश्वः याद्यः नियाः याद्यः नियाः याद्यः नियाः याद्यः नियाः विश्वः याद्यः नियाः याद्यः विश्वः याद्यः या

This point is explained in great detail in the sutra mentioned on such occasions as where it begins by saying,

Oh son of noble family, this wish for enlightenment is like a seed for each and every quality of an enlightened being. And because it makes all the pure white qualities of every living being grow and increase, it is like a rich field of soil. . .

And continues up to,

... It is as well like an excellent [wish-giving] vase, for it fulfills your every wish. And it is, finally, like a spear, in that you can use it to defeat the enemy of anything related to the mental afflictions.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Three: How to Make Offerings

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chubsems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

चिट-क्वाणुःश्रेश्वाचात्वटःच-दटा। श्रुॅन्यःयःस्यानुःयुक्यःयःयःश्लेवःयवेःर्स्यःयान्तेश्वा चिट-क्वाणुःश्रेश्वाचात्वटःक्वाणुःश्वेश्वाचानुश्वाचश्चेत्रःयःयःश्लेवःयवेःर्स्यःयान्तेश्वा

The second major section concerns how to train oneself in the activities of a bodhisattva, once one has been able to develop the two forms of the wish for enlightenment. This section itself has two parts: how to acquire the wish for enlightenment, and how to train oneself in the perfections, which are the activities of the bodhisattva.

ल्लास्य विश्वास्त्र स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्र स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्रीय स्त्र स्रि स्त्रीय स्वादित स्त्रीय स्त्रीय

The first of these two parts has two divisions of its own. The first concerns purifying oneself of the hindering conditions that consist of bad deeds. This is done by applying all four of the forces of purification, once one has already performed the preliminary practices of prostration, offering, and going for refuge. The second concerns the actual practice of acquiring the wish for enlightenment, once one has already completed the actions of accumulating conducive conditions, which is done through the various practices which begin with rejoicing in virtue.

यक्षिमा मक्र्यास्य प्रति प्रत

We will explain the first of these two divisions in two steps: an explanation of the actual text of the chapter, and an explanation of the chapter's name. The former of these will proceed in four stages represented by the four practices of offering, prostration, going for refuge, and purifying oneself of bad deeds. For the first of these we will cover the need to make offerings, and then the kinds of offerings themselves.

Make offerings, in an excellent way, to Those Who have Gone That Way; to the holy Jewel Of the Dharma, the absence of impurity; and to Those oceans of high spiritual qualities: To the sons and daughters of the Buddhas, In order to acquire this jewel wish.

स्योशन्तान्तर्भा चीर्यान्तर्भा भी स्थान्तर्भा स्थान्तर्भा स्थान्तर्भा स्थान्तर्भा स्थान्तर्भा स्थान्तर्भा स्थान्तर्भ स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्य स्थान्तर्भ स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्यान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Three

You should *make offerings in an excellent way,* meaning that you should offer the most exquisite objects with thoughts and in a manner which is filled with reverence. What should be the goal of making these offerings? You should present them *in order to acquire the jewel of the wish* for enlightenment, which supplies every single good thing there is to every single living being.

And to whom should you make the offerings? They should be made first of all to Those Who Have Gone That Way. And then they should be made to the holy jewel of the Dharma, so called because it is the Dharma of holy realized beings. This Dharma consists of the truth of cessation, and the truth of the path, in the greater way. The truth of cessation here includes both natural purity and also the absence of any temporary *impurities*.

And you should finally make offerings to those great ones who are like *oceans* of high spiritual qualities: to sons and daughters of the Buddhas who are realized beings such as the Lord, Loving Eyes (Avalokiteshvara), and Gentle Voice (Manjushri).

हु.क्षेत्र.रयेका.ययु.क्ष्का.रटा। यर्या.स्यायवीट.ययु.ह्या.वयेका.ययु.क्षी.शक्य.रटा। रयेका.रटा। ध्र्या.श्रेका यर्या.स्यायवीट.ययु.ह्या.ग्री.अक्ट्रात्याय्येशा प्रक्र्रात्याय्येश ।याथ्रेयाताकाय्येशा यर्या.स्यायवीट.ययु.ह्या.ग्री.अक्ट्रात्यदाह्या.

We will discuss the kinds of offerings in three parts: the offering of things which have no owner; the giving of your own body; and the offering of things which you emanate with your own thoughts. For the first we will describe what it is we offer, and then how it is we offer it, and finally the reason for giving things which have no owner.

विश्वेत्राय्य्यायः द्वित्राः स्त्रीत्रः स्त

विद्यान्त्रः भ्रम् क्ष्यः भ्रम् क्षयः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्ष्यः क्षयः क्ष्यः क्षयः क्ष्यः क्षयः क्षय

Give flowers, and fruits, as many as exist;
And all the different herbs, as many as there may be.
Give each and every precious substance contained in the planet,
All the pure and lovely water that exists.
Give the precious mountains, and so too
The forests, quiet places of refuge, and lovely spots;
Give the plants, studded with flowers, and adorned,
The trees whose branches are bent low under fine ripe fruit.
Give fragrances and incenses, even those which are found
In the worlds of pleasure beings and the like;
The wishing tree, and the tree of precious substances.
Give grain that grows without ever being planted,
And any other lovely object which is worthy of presenting—

Lovely lakes and bathing ponds bedecked with lotus blossoms And water birds of beauty, singing their splendid songs.

यन्त्राक्षी वहेवाहेत्रत्वार्थकात्राधेकात्राच्यात्राक्षेत्राचन्त्राक्षेत्राचन्त्राक्षेत्राक्षाक्षेत्र्वाकात्राधे वाद्यात्राक्षेत्रयाद्यकात् हेत्र्युत्यक्षेत्रयाद्या वास्य क्षेत्रयाक्षेत्रयाक्षेत्रयाद्यकात् क्षेत्रयाद्यकात् विक्षेत्रयाद्यकात् विक्षेत्रयाद्यकात् विक्षेत्रयाद्यकात् विक्षेत्रयाद्यक्षेत् रविज्ञाचर चच्चीत् । विज्ञीका तत् प्रेश्वाचा वा क्ष्मां चीला चाल्या क्ष्मां वा विज्ञाचर चच्चीत् । विज्ञोका तत् प्रेश्वाचा वा क्ष्मां चीला चाल्या प्राप्त विज्ञाचा विज

You should first *give* those things in the world which have no owner. Give flowers, flowers like the lotus, and give the fruits of the trees, like the olive, as many as exist everywhere. Then give all the different herbs of the earth, camphor and the like, as many as there may be. Give each and every precious substance contained in the planet: gold, silver, and anything of the sort. Give all the pure and lovely water of every ocean, lake, and other bodies of water that exists. Give the eight precious mountains of gold and all the rest, and so too give all the forests, give all the quiet places of refuge, all the lovely spots, all the many kinds of plants, each studded with a variety of jewel flowers, each adorned in beauty. Give all the trees whose branches are bent low under the weight of fine ripe fruit. Give all the fine *fragrances and incenses* that exist, whether they be natural, or concocted, or transformed, and include even those which are found in the worlds of pleasure beings, serpent-beings, and the like. Give the wishing tree, which supplies your every wish, and give the tree made of precious substances. Give lovely lakes and bathing ponds, ones that grant your every desire, bedecked with lotus blossoms, and give the waterbirds who live upon them, in all their beauty, singing their splendid songs. Give every kind of grain, growing of its own accord, without ever being planted. Offer these, and offer any other lovely object which is worthy of presenting to the Jewels. Certain authors who failed to understand the commentary have explained the order of the root text in a different way.

विद्याक्षात्वर्थः द्यूट्यावद्यात्यो वद्गे द्यावद्या । विद्याक्षात्यः वद्गे द्यावद्या । विद्याक्षात्यः व्यावद्य । विद्याक्षात्यः व्यावद्य । विद्याक्षात्यः व्यावद्य । विद्याक्षात्यः व्यावद्य । विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याकष्यः विद्याक्षात्यः विद्याकष्यः वि

I imagine in my mind each and every one
Of those objects owned by no one
Which may exist in all the infinite expanse
Of all of myriad space. I offer these
In an excellent way, to the highest
Of all living beings, to the Able Ones,
Along with their sons and daughters.
May all of these beings of highest spiritual qualities,
Who possess the ultimate form of compassion,
Look upon me with love, and accept all I offer.

यक्षेत्र-रम्प्राह्म व्याप्तान्त्र स्वाप्तान्त्र स्वाप्तान्त्य स्वाप्तान्त्र स्वाप्तान

Here next is the way in which we offer those things which have no owner. Think to yourself, "I imagine in my mind each and every one of those objects owned by no one which may exist in all the infinite expanse, upon the limitless number, of all the myriad planets there are in all of space. I offer these objects in an excellent way, with great reverence, to certain special beings; that is, to the highest of all living beings, to the Able Ones, along with their sons and daughters. May all of these beings of highest spiritual qualities, all those who possess the ultimate form of compassion, look upon me with love, and so accept all these objects which I offer."

| प्रमानि स्थानि स्थान

I am not the kind of person who has merit,
I am extremely poor, and I have no other kind
Of wealth that I might offer. I beg you therefore,
Protector who thinks of what might be
Of benefit to others, to use your power
To accept these offerings, all for my own sake.

याल्यस्त्रात्त्र्रेत्रः याल्यस्त्रात्त्र्यात्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः यात्र्यात्रः स्त्रेत्रः यात्र्यात्रः स्त्रेत्रः याल्यस्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्यः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्र

Here is the explanation of why we offer things which have no owner. One may begin with the following question: "What is the use of offering things which are only imagined in the mind? Would it not be better to actually offer some lovely object or another?" *I am not the kind of person who has* been able, in the past, to accumulate any great amount of *merit*, and so I am *extremely poor*, in the sense that I possess none of the things that I would like to. And so *I have no* rights at all to any *other kind of wealth that I might offer. I beg you therefore*, you who are the *Protector who thinks* exclusively *of what might be of benefit to others, to use your power to accept* this offering I have made, this object which has no other owner, and to do so *for my own sake*.

বিশ্ব বিশ্র বিশ্ব বিশ্র

|गुरु:पर्यः सर्केत्। इसरा चन्त्रा है। प्रेंट्यः चल्लेयः वैत्रा |सेस्यः प्रेंट्रः ग्री: वन्यः सुः सर्केः चरः चर्ची।

I offer my own body forever to the Victors, And to their sons and daughters; and I beg These supreme warriors to accept me, totally, For in reverence I offer myself as your subject.

Here next is the giving of your own body. The next section of the text is meant to say, "But I do have a body that I could offer you, and so I do." I do have the rights to my own body, and I hereby give up, forever and in every way, any concept of it belonging to myself. I offer it instead to the Victors, and to their sons and daughters. I beg these supreme warriors to accept me, my body, totally. I am impelled by my faith and reverence for you to offer myself as your subject, and I will do whatever you command me to do.

Because you have taken me into your care, I no longer need to concern myself With the fears of the cycle of life; I can be of benefit to all living things. I will transcend, totally, all the bad deeds Of the past, and from this point on I will never commit any new bad deeds.

र्श्र्वात्यायमाग्रीटाश्चीत्रीत्। र्श्र्वात्यायमाग्राटाश्चीत्। र्श्र्वात्यायमाग्यायश्चित्। र्श्र्वाव्यायस्य स्थायमाग्यायश्चित्। र्श्र्वात्यायमाग्यायश्चित्। र्श्र्वात्यायमाग्वात्यस्य स्थायस्य स्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य स्थायस्य

And what will I do, once I have offered myself to you? *Because you have taken me into your care*, I have reached a kind of protection where I am free of all fear. And because I *no longer need to concern myself with the fears of the cycle of life*, because I am finally free of every fear, I can be of benefit to all living things. I will transcend, totally, all the energy of any bad deeds which I accumulated in the past; and from this point on, I will never commit any new bad deeds, even should it cost me my life.

विश्वास्त्रास्त्रीयः श्रुत्यान्ता भी ही तत्।
सद्भामा की या त्यान्ता स्त्रास्त्रा स्त्रास्त्र स्त्रास्त्र स्त्रा स्त्रास्त्र स्त्र स्त्रास्त्र स्त्रास्त्र स्त्र स्त्रास्त्र स्त्र स

There are two major divisions to our third point, the offering of things which you emanate with your own thoughts. The first of them has twelve parts of its own: the offering of bathing, of lovely clothing, precious adornments, ointments, flowers, incense, fine foods, lights, mansions, parasols, and music, followed by the act of blessing, so that the stream of offering can continue never-ending. The offering of bathing covers three subjects: the bathing chamber, the way in which to offer the bathing, and how to wipe dry the holy body.

वियाम्भः मान्यः योषः मान्यः विदायक्षेत्रः याः सूत्रः । वियाम्भः मान्यः योषः मान्यः विदायक्षेत्रः याः सूत्रः ।

|२ैब-केब-दवर-वदिःग|नःधेर-देर-खूब| |सु-हैग|देर-कग|रान्त्र-रोन्नेरान्दर

I make this offering in a great bathing chamber, Filled with fine fragrance, and with a floor Made of crystal, perfectly clear, sparkling, gleaming. The chamber has lovely pillars, Glowing with precious jewels, And a canopy stretched across it, With pearls, and radiating light.

Here is the offering of bathing. Where does one perform this offering? *In a great bathing chamber*, strewn with sandalwood and other scents, so that it is *filled with fine fragrance*. *The floor* of the chamber *is* made of *crystal*: it is *perfectly clear*, *and sparkles* with light. The entire surface of the room *gleams*, for it has been cleaned and shined perfectly. The chamber has *lovely pillars*, rafters, and details; they *glow with* the light of *precious jewels*. *Stretched* above it all is a great *canopy*, studded with fine *pearls* that *radiate light* of their own.

निः चल्लेबः चालेवाबः न्दः नेः धोः ख्रुबः स्वाधः धा निः चल्लेबः चालेवाबः सरः चग्नादः चः ख्रुः न्दः के। निः चल्लेबः चालेवाबः सरः चग्नादः चः ख्रुः न्दः के। निः चल्लेबः चालेवाबः नदः नेः धोः ख्रुबः स्वाधः या।

Make this offering of bathing to the holy bodies Of Those Who Have Gone That Way, and to Their sons and daughters. Use many great And precious vases, filled with water Which is scented, and lovely; make the offering With a great number of songs, and music.

You should make the offering of bathing to the holy bodies of Those Who Have Gone That Way, and to their sons and daughters, by using many great vases, filled with water which is scented with various fragrances, and made of gold and other precious materials. The water should also be mixed with lovely blooms, and the bathing done while singing a great number of beautiful songs, and playing wonderful music.

| त्रित्याः भूष्यः यस्त्र्यः यस्त्रः स्त्रः स्त

Wipe the holy bodies of these ones Using immaculate towels, beyond all compare, Imbued with the sweetest of scents.

After this you should wipe the holy bodies of these ones to whom you have made the offering of bathing, using soft and immaculate towels beyond all compare, imbued with the sweetest of scents.

|दे.यश.टे.ज.व.ट्रंग.ज्यायश्चर्यं क्र्यायः द्वा |य.च=द.वेय.टे.टे.वेयः द्यायः द्वाया |प्राच=ट.य्यः त्यः व्यायः द्वाया

Next offer them the highest of all clothing, Stained the excellent color, and wafting With the finest fragrance. Offer them a whole Variety of rich raiments, sheer and soft.

यबरार्ग् स्वायायहरू स्वायायहरू स्वायायहरू स्वायायहरू स्वायायहरू स्वायायहरू स्वायायहरू स्वायायहरू स्वायायहरू स्व

Once you have wiped the holy bodies of those to whom you are making the offering, then next offer them the highest of all clothing, stained the excellent color, and wafting with the finest fragrance. If they are ones who wear the clothes of a householder, then offer them rich raiments, sheer and soft, in a whole variety of styles and hues.

विष्ठ के bundreds of bigbest expanses

Offer too hundreds of highest ornaments, Of every different sort, to those realized beings Such as Excellent One, and the Undefeatable, To Gentle Voice, and the Lord of All the World.

र्टा यह मा हे ब र चार खुँ मा अंग्रां भावता स्वीतः प्रांची स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्वातः स्व मार्चितः स्वातः स्व मार्चितः स्वातः स्व

The "hundreds of highest ornaments" here refers to earrings and other such adornments. "Of every different sort" means armbands and others of the like. These too you should offer, to those realized beings such as Excellent One (Samantabadra), and the Undefeatable (Maitreya), to Gentle Voice (Manjushri), and to the Lord of the World (Avalokiteshvara).

विद्-क्रम्बाद्यर्ग्न, द्वीः द्वाः प्वाः स्वाः विद्-क्ष्यं व्याः स्वाः स

Now take the highest of all fragrant ointments, With scents that pervade the thousand groups Of a thousand collections of a thousand planets each, And use them to anoint the holy bodies of every one Of the Lords of the Able Ones, those who are like Pure refined gold, shined to a perfect polish.

चिट्रत्यर पदः भ्रुं देन्या चुवा पर प्रचीद्। गुर्न खीः भ्रुं वाश्वर देन्या चुवा पर प्रचीद्। विद्राप्त की भूट वाश्वर गुर्ने हें लेका संदे प्रचीदें प्रचीका पर प्रचेका प्रविद्र प्रचीका स्वर ग्रीका स्वर प्रचीका स्वर प

Now take the highest of all fragrant ointments, with scents that pervade the thousand groups of a thousand collections of a thousand planets each, and use them to anoint the holy bodies of every one of the Lords of the Able Ones, those whose forms gleam and blaze with light, as though they were made of pure refined gold, free of every impurity, shined to a perfect polish.

वितः निर्मास्त्र निर्मास्य स्थानित्त स्थानित स्थानित

Make offerings to the highest object of all offerings, To the Lords of the Able Ones; offer every Different kind of flower, like the mandara, The red lotus, and the blue lotus, Arranged as well in lovely garlands.

श्चर्याक्षे श्चर्यात्र प्रमानिक्षं विद्यात्र प्रमानिक्य प्रमानिक्षं विद्यात्र प्रमानिक्

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Three

Make offerings, to the highest object of all offerings, to the Lords of the Able Ones. With what kinds of offerings? Offer to them every different kind of flower: beautiful, fragrant blooms like the mandara, the red lotus, and the blue lotus. Offer the flowers loose, and offer them as well arranged in lovely garlands.

Offer them too supreme incense powders, exquisite, Great clouds of incense that send forth all their scent.

पर्वर विपाय भी पर्वण पर्वर श्रें भाभक्षेत्र । स्थान ।

Offer them too supreme incense powders, exquisite, such as the akaru and others. Give great clouds of incense that send their scent throughout the ten directions of space.

न्तिं.यर्ज्ञ.र्थश्वश्वाचर.यर्थेट.ट्रे.ज.र्ट्येज.यऱ.यग्री। विज.च्य.यचर.यर्थेट.कॅ.क्र्य्येश.यश्वरात.ल्री

Also offer the repast of the gods, fine foods, And every sort of refreshment.

र्येजायर प्रमीष्ट्री बिजानमाम्नीमिर तर जुन्मास प्रमास प्रम प्रमास प्रम प्रमास प्रमास

Also offer to the Victors, and to their sons and daughters, the *repast of the gods*: special kinds of *fine food*, like the sweet *likara*, and special kinds of drink or the like: *every sort of refreshment*, in a wide assortment of forms, smells, and tastes.

|मेर्बरक्रेबरक्क्ष्र्वरक्षात्वर स्थाय । स्वाया । स्वाया

Offer in addition lamps made of precious jewels, On lotuses of gold, lined in array.

पः त्र्रिः त्रवरः वर्षः रेषः क्रेषः क्रों स्थानः स्थान् । व्यान्तः वर्षः व्यान्तः वर्षः व्यान्तः वर्षः व्यान्त । वर्षः प्रवरः वर्षः रेषः क्रेषः क्रों स्थानः स्थानः वर्षः व्यान्तः वर्षः व्यान्तः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्ष

Offer in addition lamps made of precious jewels, burning forth their light, set into holders that are lotuses of gold, lined in array: that is, set forth in long rows.

विष्यक्षित्रक्षरः यः श्रीका ग्रीका या विषया व्यवस्तरः विषया विष

Offer, to those whose nature is compassion, The earth, set forth in a lovely way, Smeared with incense powder, and strewn With lovely blooms of loose flowers; And upon it great mansions, palaces, And within them those singing out lovely Songs of praise. The mansions are decked out In jewels, pearls and precious gems, Adorning the sky itself, and blazing.

प्रमीत्। यक्षित्। यक्षित्यकाः भाष्यते स्मिन् पुर्वे स्वयः प्रमाण्याः श्रुवाशः से देवः स्वरः स

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Three

Offer as well, to those whose nature is compassion, the earth, set forth in a lovely way, smeared with incense powder, and strewn with lovely blooms of loose flowers. Upon this earth offer great mansions, palaces, and within these palaces goddesses, singing out lovely songs of praise. See the mansions decked out in strings of thousands of jewels, pearls and precious gems, and see these great edifices adorning the sky itself, blazing in displays of limitless light.

Constantly offer to the Lords of the Able Ones Lovely parasols made of precious substances; They have golden handles, and around the edge They are covered with lovely adornments that look Like jewelry. Stand them thus, With their excellent outlines, exquisite to the eye.

देशकालान्येलाच्याच्येत्। यश्चरात्रात्येणाय्येषाय्येषाय्येषाय्येषाय्येषाय्येष्यः स्वेत्यः स्वयः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्यः स्वेत्

Constantly offer too to the Lords of the Able Ones lovely parasols made of a whole variety of precious substances. Imagine that they have golden handles, and that around the edge they are covered with lovely adornments that look like jewelry, studded with a great many precious gems. In your mind stand the parasols up—raise them—and think of their excellent outlines, exquisite to the eye.

|रे.जम्याविष्यः स्ट्रियः स्ट्

।শ্বীব,ধ্পমান্ত্র,প্র্যুম,প্রবা

Think then of a whole mass of offerings Beyond those you have already offered: Lovely music and song, and think, "May each one of them be there, In a separate cloud, to satisfy The pain of every living being."

चिट. तचिट. तम् . चीम. कुम. प्रत्या पर्या विट. तचित्र प्रत्या में प्रत्या प्रत्य प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्य प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्या प्रत्य प्रत्या प्रत्य प्रत्

Think next of a whole mass of offerings beyond those you have already offered. Think of lovely music and song, the sounds of the clay drum and others; think to yourself, "May each one of them be there, may each of them come, in a separate mass or cloud of offerings, and may each of them have the power to remove the pain of every living being, and to satisfy them—completely fill them—even if all they do is catch the sound for a moment.

| नुसः केंसः नुगेंदः सकेंगः प्रस्रसः उत् न्दः।
| सकेंद्रः हेद्रः द्रस्यसः ददः हुः ग्राह्यसः त्या
| देद्रः केदः सेः हेंगः पः संग्रासः केंग्।
| कुदः सेः पकदः परः प्रवायः परः विग्
| And think. "May a great rain fall.

And think, "May a great rain fall, In a never-ending stream, precious gems, And flowers, and other such offerings, Upon each and every expression Of the Jewel of the Holy Dharma, Upon shrines of offering, And upon the holy bodies."

निर्वः यक्षित्रः सन्ते। यक्षिरः स्यः ध्यवः त्याः प्रवेशः यक्षित्रः यक्षित्रः योः श्वेशः प्रवेशः स्वेशः स्वेशः य

And now think to yourself, "May a great rain of offerings fall, in a never-ending stream, for as long as the cycle of suffering itself continues to exist. May there be a rain of precious gems, and flowers, and other such offerings upon each and every expression of the Jewel of the Holy Dharma, which in itself includes all twelve divisions of the highest form of the spoken word. And may the rain fall as well upon those places where the holy minds of the enlightened ones stay: on the offering shrines which have at their hearts the relics that come from these beings. And may it finally fall upon the bodily representations of these same beings, whether they be drawn on paper, or in any other form."

वित्र व्याप्त क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्य क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष्या क्ष

And think, "May I be like those named Gentle Voice, And all the others, who present Their offerings to the Victors.
May I, like them, make offerings
To all of Those Who have Gone That Way,
To the Protectors, and to their sons and daughters.

पक्षिरायात्वाकारात्वाक्षेत्रः स्थान्यात्वाक्षेत्रः स्थान्यात्वाक्षेत्रः स्थान्यात्वाक्षेत्रः स्थान्यात्वाक्षेत्रः स्थान्यात्वाक्षेत्रः स्थान्यः स्यान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्थान्यः स्थान्य

Here secondly is the unsurpassable offering. "And may I be like those named Gentle Voice (Manjushri), and Excellent One (Samantabhadra), and all the other bodhisattvas who have gained the power; those who fill the entire expanse of space with offerings emanated in their thoughts, and present them to the Victors. May I, like them, make these same offerings to all of Those Who have Gone That Way, to the Protectors of gods and men, and to their sons and daughters as well."

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Three

मिलायास्त्रम् । विद्यायास्त्रम् स्त्रम् । विद्यायास्त्रम् । विद्यायस्त्रम् । विद्यायस्त्रम्यस्त्रम् । वि

The scripture called the Precious Tala says,

The great ones make offerings to the Victors, With a shower of flowers, a flower canopy, With flowers sent forth in rays of light, With every flower that ever exists, Strewn all over the earth itself.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Four: The Four Forces of Purification, Part One

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chubsems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

न्त्रा ह्र्याम् इत्राचित्राह् । उत्राचित्राह् । उत्राचित्राह । उत्राचित्राह । व्या ह्र्याम् ह्र्याम ह्राम ह्र्याम ह्र्या

The fourth section here concerns purifying yourself of bad deeds, through using all four of the forces together. We begin with a general presentation. You should from the very beginning make efforts to see that you are not sullied by performing any harmful actions. Despite your efforts, however, such an action may occur, due to some instance of carelessness, an attack of mental afflictions, or the like. It would be a mistake in such a case to simply ignore the bad deed; you should rather exert yourself in the various methods of repairing the damage. These methods were taught by our compassionate Teacher.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Four

लुव.त्रका.टे.चुल.चुका.चार्च्य.वंका.व.का.ट्रका.ता.कं.वु.झूंका। कूंचका.टटा। हेव.चु.कूंचका.क्.खुका.चार्च्य.त्रका.घे.चेका.चुट.चकाचाका.ता.वु.लाका.वु.हुंट.ट्रका. बीव.त्रचुव.ता.चीव.टे.झूंट.ता.टटा। चारुव.त्.च्यांचे.टे.झूंट.ता.टटा। हेका.ता.लाका.चर्च्या.ता.वु. चकाचाका.ता.लाट.चुल.चुका.चार्च्य.ता.च्यांचेका.च्यांचेका.चेट. चिट.क्.च.क्.च्यांचेका.चार्च्य.का.च्यांचेका.च्यांचेका.चेट.

Instances in which you have committed some transgression of your vows, at whichever level of vows you may have, should be repaired according to the methods prescribed for those particular vows. For repairing the damage caused by other kinds of bad deeds you should utilize the four powers. As the *Sutra on the Four Practices* states,

If, oh Loving One, some great bodhisattva has succeeded in the four practices, then even those bad deeds which have been both committed and collected can be overcome. What are the four practices? They are as follows: the activity of destruction; the activity of applying the antidote; the force of restraining from the particular bad deed; and the force of the foundation.

The expression "committed and collected" refers to actions whose karmic results are "certain to be experienced." If even these types of karmic results can be overcome by the four practices, then there is no need to mention those which are not certain to be experienced.

रे'याः बूर्वमान्दः ये'मे'मे को'नवे'यवे 'यमानुमान'या'य र्योद् 'या सदान प्योम 'हे'वदी 'हे 'वि हो हो 'व द्यो'नवे 'यमागुमा'वन्न स्वामानुमानवे 'यमानुमान स्वामान स्वामान स्वामान स्वामान स्वामान स्वामान स्वामान स्वामान

The first of these four forces involves feeling strong regret over having committed some negative action. In order to achieve this level of regret, you must contemplate carefully the way in which negative actions trigger three different karmic results.

|ब्रॅन्यानिक्षायात्रेक्षायात्रम्यात्रम्यात्रायात्रम्यात्यात्रम्य

मर्केर्पायायहेर्पार्या मर्करायायहेर्पार्थेष्रामार्थेष

The second force, as described in the *Compendium of Trainings*, consists of performing practices such as studying the profound scriptures of the canon, meditating on emptiness, reciting secret words, preparing physical representations of the holy bodies of enlightened beings, making offerings, and reciting the names of high beings.

क्ष्यायः विकासके क्ष्यायः क्ष्यायः क्ष्यायः क्ष्यायः विकासके विकासका क्ष्यायः विकासके विकासके विकासका विकासके विकासका विकासके विकासका विकासके विकासका विकासके विकासका विकासका

The third force is to restrain yourself perfectly from ever committing these negative actions again in the future. The fourth consists of meditating upon the wish for enlightenment, and similar practices. Here it is the first force which is described in great detail. The points to be considered are the time at which the bad deeds may have been committed, the cause, the mode of expression, the undertaking of the deed, its object, and how the deed was committed.

श्री इंचर्यान्ता याक्षेत्राचे मुत्राच्या स्थायमा सुर्याच्या स्थाया सुर्याच्या सुर्याच्याच्याच सुर्याच्याच सुर्याच सुर्याच्याच सुर्याच्याच सुर्याच सुर्याच सुर्याच्याच सुर्याच स

Next we present some detail on each of the four: the force of the activity of destruction; the force of the foundation; the force of the activity of applying the antidote; and the force of restraining from the particular bad deed.

THE FORCE OF THE ACTIVITY OF DESTRUCTION

र्रम् अर्पायत्वे कृषा या ग्रुमाया है स्वराय क्षेत्राय स्वराय क्षेत्राय क्षेत्र क्षेत्राय क्षेत्राय क्षेत्र क्षेत्र

ষ্ট্রবা,নপ্ন,বहুবাপ,নধু,প্র্বা,বপ্রপানর্

We will explain the first force in four steps: an explanation of the process of regret, which you reach by examining the way in which you have committed the negative deed; the practice of developing regret out of fear that you may die while you still possess the negative deed, along with an explanation of how to go for refuge; the practice of developing regret by considering with special attention the way in which you have committed a negative deed which is meaningless; and the practice of learning to fear negative deeds.

प्टे.टक्र्रीट्र.तम्.यर्वयोद्यात्त्र्यं २४.ज.क्रुंयात्तःक्र्यम्.कंत्रयःव्यक्षःतःयर्वयोद्यातःयेषात्रःतःतः। भ्राउट्ट्रत्यःवःवय्यक्षःयः २८.क्रुंय्तःक्र्यातःक्र्यात्रःक्र्यातःक्र्यातःयवयोद्यातःयेषातःम् १८८क्र्यःतःक्ष्यातःक्र्यातःक्ष्यातःयवयोद्यातःयव्यव्यव्यातःम् १८८क्ष्यः

The first of these steps has four parts of its own: requesting the one to whom you are going to reveal your negative action to attend to your confession; a method for a general purification of negative actions you have committed, according to time, cause, type, or other detail; a method for the purification of especially powerful negative actions which have been committed towards some special object; and learning to perform purification due to regret inspired by having considered carefully the unwanted karmic results that the action will bring you.

I make supplication, with my palms joined at my breast, To the totally enlightened beings, and bodhisattvas, Who reside in every direction of the world: To those beings who possess great compassion.

|८८.मृ.यु। ह्य्यात्राक्षत्रात्राच्यात्राक्ष्यात्रात्राह्यात्रात्राक्ष्यात्राक्ष्यात्रात्राक्ष्यात्रा

त्रश्चर्ययात्राम् स्वास्त्राचात्रद्वेत्रस्य स्वास्त्रम् । स्राच्ययात्राम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम् स्वास्त्रम्

Here is the first. I make supplication, with my palms joined at my breast, to the totally enlightened beings, and bodhisattvas who reside in every direction of the world: to those beings who possess great compassion. I request them to hear my confession, which I make out of regret for the negative deeds I have committed.

विष्यास्य स्वर्गायस्य स्वर्णस्य स्वर्यस्य स्वर्णस्य स्वर्णस्य स्वर्णस्य स्वर्णस्य स्वर्णस्य स्वर्णस्य स्वर्णस्य स्वर्णस्य स्व

In the cycle of life without beginning,
In both this and my other lives,
I committed bad deeds without understanding
And encouraged others to commit them;
Overcome by my total failure to understand, I took joy.
Now I see my mistakes, as many as I may have made,
And I confess them to the Protectors
From the bottom of my heart.

योश्र-क्रियान्य-वर्ष्योश्व-स्तान्त्र-स्त्

चलुक्-र्-चन्नभ्रात्ताव्यात्त्रात्रम्भ्यत् स्त्रम्भ्यात्याच्यव्याक्षःभ्रेत्यात्यः स्त्रम्भ्यात्याः स्त्रम्भ्यात्यः स्त्रम्भ्याः स्त्रम्भः स्त्रमः स्त्रम्भः स्त्रमः स्त

Here is the second point. During all the time that I have circled around *in the cycle of life*, for time *without beginning*, *in both this and my other lives*, I have *committed bad deeds* myself. I have as well *encouraged others to commit them*. And because of the fact that I was *overcome by my total failure to understand* the principles of deeds and their consequences, I took joy in the negative actions committed by others. I see now that all of my mistakes, as many as I may have made, truly are mistakes, and with regret that comes *from the bottom of my heart I confess* these mistakes to the *Protectors*—I conceal nothing, I hide nothing.

|यद्याःयोश्चःदर्ग्वरःश्चर्याःयश्च्यःददःवे। |र्द्धदःश्चरःशःद्वाःद्वाःव। |र्द्धदःश्चरःशःद्वाःव। |यद्याःयोश्चःद्वाःव। |यद्याःयोश्चःद्वांद्वाःव।

I confess whatever harm I may ever have done towards The Three Jewels, my parents, and other high objects With my actions, my speech, and my thoughts Caused by the mental afflictions.

प्रमुद्र्।

प्रमुद्र्।

प्रमुद्र्।

प्रमुद्र्।

प्रमुद्र्।

प्रमुद्र्।

प्रमुद्र्।

प्रमुद्र।

Here is the third point. The person who was mistaken—that is, *I* myself—confess whatever harm *I* may ever have done towards the Three Jewels, or towards my parents, and towards any other such high object of merit; I confess all these actions, which were caused by the mental afflictions known as the three poisons, and which were expressed with either my bodily actions, my speech, and my thoughts.

বিষ্ঠান্থ বিষ্

I am a person full of negative actions;
I have been infected by a great number of bad deeds.
I confess to every one of the Guides
All the dreadful negative deeds I've done.

तश्चीर-तश्चात्वेर-देश्चात्वर-त्यवीश्वात्त्र-देश्चश्चात्वर्त्वर-त्यदेश्चात्वर्वाश्च्यां स्थ्रीत्यः स्थ्रात्वर-स्थ्याश्चात्वर्वाश्च्याः स्थ्याश्च्याः स्थ्याः स्थ्याश्च्याः स्थ्याः स्थ्यः स्थयः स्थयः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थ्यः स्थय

Next is the fourth point. *I am a person full of negative actions; I have been infected by a great number of bad deeds,* by emotions such as attachment, which will act as causes that will bring me the karmic result of a birth in the hells or the like. *All the negative deeds that I have done,* actions like killing and the like, are going to create for me immense suffering; they are therefore *dreadful,* and *I confess* them *to every one of the Guides*.

विद्याके श्रीयाया अप्तरायमा श्रिक्र प्रत्या अप्यम् प्रत्या क्षेत्र प्रत्या अप्यम् प्रत्या अप्यम् प्रत्या अप्यम् श्रिक्र प्रत्ये क्ष्या यो अप्या अप्यम् प्रत्या अप्या I could be finished off first, befo

I could be finished off first, before I can clean myself of my negative deeds. And so I beg you protect me, speedily, In any way I'll be certainly freed.

पर्यक्तित्व क्षेत्रास्त्रे अस्त्र प्राच्यास्य प्रत्यास्य स्त्र प्राच्यास्य स्त्र स्त्र प्रत्ये स्त्र स्त्र प्र

त्यानश्चित्र प्रविश्व स्थ्रेवा पा तदी त्यश्चा प्रश्व प्रविश्व प्य

Next is the part about developing regret out of fear that you may die while you still possess the negative deed, and so on. Suppose that I die while I still possess the negative deed: suppose I was unable to clean myself of the deed immediately after committing it, and failed to clean it from my mind. The Lord of Death then could come and I could be finished off first, and I would have to take a birth in one of the lower realms. And so I must avail myself of any way possible in which I will certainly be freed from my negative actions, and that I do so speedily; and so I beg you protect me, by helping me to do so.

|थेंद्रियह्रद्राक्षेत्र्द्र्यक्षःवद्याःवद्री| |वुषःद्रद्राक्षःव्यक्षःक्षेत्र्य्यका |द्याद्रद्राक्षःव्यक्षःव्यक्षःय्यद्रा |क्षेत्र्यःक्षेत्रःव्यक्ष्यद्रा

This Lord of Death cannot be trusted, He waits for no one, finished or not. He takes all sorts suddenly, those sick and well, So feel not certain about your life.

ब्रियान्यस्य स्थान्य स्थान्य

"What kind of protection," one may ask, "is it that we need, so quickly, while we have yet to die, and have still not purified ourselves of our bad deeds?" This Lord of Death cannot be trusted, even for a single moment of time, and he waits for no one: he has absolutely no interest in whether you have finished purifying yourself of your negative actions or not. His coming in no way

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Four

depends upon whether what you have hoped to do is done or not. *All sorts* of people die *suddenly*, before their life has reached its normal length, and whether they have gone through some *sickness* or whether they are *well*. Therefore you should *feel no certainty about your life*, no assurance even that you will not die this very day. And since this fact that you can feel no certainty is true, you should quickly purify yourself of your negative actions.

त्रश्रूचाराःचित्राराःवर्श्चर्राःतर्श्व व्यक्ष्यःत्राःच्याः स्टान्नेत्रःव्यक्षःत्रःच्यः स्वान्त्रःच्यः स्वान्तः वर्श्वः स्वान्तः स्वानः स्वान्तः स्

Next is the point about meaningless misdeeds. Here first we cover the kind of regret you have about negative actions you have committed for the sake of your relatives, or for the sake of your body or possessions or anything of the like, all because you failed to realize how they were nothing you could ever depend upon. After that will come a metaphor to show how, at the moment of death, none of these is anything more than a memory. Then we will cover the kind of regret you reach about having committed these kinds of negative actions once you have seen directly as well how none of the things for whom you committed the actions were in any way something you could depend upon. And then finally we will discuss the regret that you develop over the negative deeds you committed because you failed to realize that there was no certainty at all when you would die.

I'll have to give up it all and travel, But I've failed to realize this fact, And so I've committed an entire variety Of bad deeds for friends and enemies. प्रश्यक्षेत्र पर्यो व्यक्षेत्र प्रत्ये क्षेत्र क्षेत्

Here is the first of the four points. *I will have to give up it all*—my relatives, and all my possessions and the rest, and even the flesh and blood and such which came with me when I was born—and travel on to the life beyond, alone, by myself. But I have failed to realize this fact, and so I have committed an entire variety of bad deeds for the sake of protecting my friends and defeating my enemies. This is one reason why I should now feel regret.

The enemies cease to exist, The friends too cease to exist, I myself cease to exist as well; And everything else ceases too.

And it was wrong to commit bad deeds for these reasons, because shortly afterwards the enemies cease to exist, and the friends to cease to exist, and I myself cease to exist as well. Just so everything else, the relatives and the possessions and so on, ceases too. Nothing is in the least bit dependable, and so I should also feel regret at having committed negative actions due to any attachment or dislike for any of them.

All the objects you use are the same As something experienced during a dream. They are soon nothing but some memory; All things that have passed are no longer here.

Think of some minor pleasure that you might *experience during a dream*. When you wake up, the pleasure is no longer anything but a memory. *All the objects* that you might deceive yourself into thinking are pleasant in this life, and which *you use, are the same*. When you die *they are soon nothing but some memory*. Therefore you should resolve, from this moment on, and time and time again, that you will only practice the Dharma. *All* those *things* that *have passed are no longer here*, and so they become nothing more than a memory.

१२.७वा.मार्श्वर.कु.वर.छे.८८। १सह्य.८८:श्र.सह्य.८.४.७८ १८.८म.ट्र.२.२.२४.५८ १९.८म.ट्र.५.२.२४.५८ १४.८३८:मार.

Even here in the present moment, In the time that we have lived, Many friends and enemies have slipped to the past.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Four

But all the negative that we committed For their sakes lies before us still.

त्र्युंर्यायार्थे व्यविष्याय्ये विषयायार्थे स्वरं क्षेत्रः विषयाय्ये स्वरं क्षेत्रः विषयः विषय

Even here in the present moment, in the time that we have lived, we have seen many who were our friends, and many who were our enemies, slip into the past. But whatever dreadful consequences there may be from all the negative that we committed for their sakes still lies before us. It's like the lines that say,

Since they can never take upon themselves Any share of the suffering, What use then are the best of friends, Who only serve to hinder us?

Thus we must feel, over and over again, deep regret at having committed bad deeds for their sakes.

|दे.क्षेत्र.चरमा.बे.म्ब्री.चेत्र.खेळा |चरमा.म्बेश.स्.चेश.चर.था.म्बेर.चळा |चर्मा.म्बेश.क्ष्माळ्याळा दर.खे.क्रंट.म्बेश |क्षेत्रा.च.क्षा.क्ष्माळ्याळा द्वा.चे.

As I live in this condition, suddenly, Without my even realizing it, I commit a great number of different bad deeds, Due to my ignorance, to liking and disliking.

|प्रावि:यः मे ने द्वार्यः प्रायाः मे स्वार्यः प्रायाः मे स्वार्यः स्वार्यः प्रायाः मे स्वार्यः स्वरं स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वरं स्वरं

चुर्च।

समान्त्रभाग्निमान्यसम्बद्धः स्वान्त्रभाग्निमान्यसम्बद्धः स्वान्तिमान्यसम्बद्धः स्वान्तिमान्यसम्बद्धः स्वान्तिमान्यसम्बद्धः स्वान्तिमान्यसम्बद्धः स्वान्तिमान्यसमान्यसम्बद्धः स्वान्तिमान्यसम्बद्धः स्वानि

In just a single instant of time as I live in this condition, of having no certainty when it is that I will die—that is to say, suddenly, without my even realizing it, I commit a great number of different bad deeds, due to my ignorance, my tendency of liking some things, and disliking other things. These now will take me to a birth in the lower realms. I must contemplate thus the facts of how my death is certain, and how the time that I will die is not certain at all, and how when I die there is nothing at all that can help me except the Dharma. I must think carefully too of all the problems of these lower realms. I must feel, and feel again and again, deep regret then at having committed these negative deeds.

द्वीःसरः स्रुचाः चर्ष्यः ख्रीसः चार्त्तः द्वान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्यः व्यान्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः व्यान्

This brings us to the fourth step in the explanation of the first of the forces: the practice of learning to fear negative deeds. Here too there are four parts. The first is learning to feel fear about the certainty of death, which is a fact because you cannot add any time onto your life, which is melting away constantly, without a moment's hesitation; and to feel fear that you might die while you still possess negative deeds. The second is thinking about how, if you fail to purify yourself of the power of negative actions, you will be forced even in this very life to experience suffering. The third is a description of the reason why great fear will come, and the fourth a description of how, in your future life, you will be tormented by pain.

१क्षेत्रः सर्वतः क्षेत्रः संभितः स्वीतः स्वा १क्षेत्रः सर्वान्तः क्षेत्रः स्वीतः स्वी |यर्वाःक्षःवक्षःवरःक्षश्चःशःवर्णुर।

Day and night, without hesitating This life is forever dropping, There is no extra life set aside That is ever going to come to you. How then could it ever happen That someone like me wouldn't die?

श्रक्षत्रक्षेत्रः स्त्रं स्वात्त्रक्ष्याः स्वाद्याः स्व

Here is the first of the four. No matter which of the three kinds of activities you may be engaged in—going somewhere, sitting somewhere, or sleeping; and during all the *day and* all the *night, without hesitating* even for a moment, this life is forever "dropping," which is to say, decreasing. There is no extra life set aside somewhere that is ever going to come to you later. How then, for what reason, could it ever happen that someone like me would not certainly die? It is definite that I will die, and there is no certainty when I will die. Therefore I must make great efforts to purify myself of all my negative actions. If one reads the Tibetan word for "drop" in this verse with an alternate spelling, it becomes the word for "mark," and the section could then be read as "life marked by days and nights."

Our discussion of the suffering in this life has itself three sections, which are all based on what would happen if you failed to purify yourself of negative actions. These are descriptions of how people like your family and friends have no ability to protect you; how you will have to fear if you have not been able to perform any good deeds; and how you will be tormented by regret.

You may be lying down on your bed Surrounded by your friends and family, But it's only you, and you alone, Who will have to undergo the pain. When Lord Death's messengers take hold of you. What's the use of your family, And what use are your friends?

Here is the first. If you fail to perform good deeds, then when you die you experience the sufferings caused by the sensations of having life stop; you may be lying down on your bed surrounded by your friends and family, people who love you with their whole hearts, but it is only you, and you alone, who will have to undergo the pain. And the problem is not only that there is no one there who can stop the terror—the messengers of the Lord of Death, in hideous forms, take hold of you. What is the use of your family at this point? And of what use are friends? Only the Dharma can protect you at that moment.

।रे.स्.चर्या.योश्यायक्षेत्र.स्

At that moment protection is good deeds alone, Though I failed to follow them during my life.

दर्ग्चेर्-पर्व। त्र्भेचन्नःग्चेः नेदःम्भेचन्नःदर्ग्नःचर्चाःग्नेन्नःमःचन्नेनःह्। विन्नःपःर्गःचन्नःपन्नः वर्ग्चेर्-पर्व। वर्णेर्न्नःप्व। नेदःम्भेचन्नःदर्गःन्न्यःग्नेन्नःमःचन्नेनःह। विन्नःपःर्गःनःमःचन्नःपन्नः। वर्णेर्नःपर्व।

Here is the second point. At the moment of death, the highest of all protection is good deeds, and good deeds alone: practices such as going for refuge, and maintaining an ethical way of life. I failed though during my life to follow these practices. These lines are describing another kind of regret, the kind you feel about having failed to do good deeds during your life.

|श्रम्याद्यात्मात्म्यात्म्यात्म्यात्म्याः |यह्म्याक्षःयःयदीःयदःसःयक्षःयःस्या |श्रीःस्याक्षंःयदीयेःकेदःद्याःस्या |श्रीम्यास्यःस्याक्षेत्रम्याः

Oh Protectors, I've been careless, and wasn't aware I'd be faced with terrors like this; And so I accomplished many negative deeds, All for the sake of this fleeting life.

क्षेत्रस्य कष्टि क्षेत्रस्य कष्टि क्षेत्रस्य क्षेत्रस्

Here is the third point. Here you are calling out to the sources of protection, with the words, "Oh Protectors." I have been careless, I was not aware, I did not know, that I would be faced like this with the terrors of the lower realms. And so I accomplished many negative deeds, all for the sake of people such as my relatives of this life, this life which is so fleeting, so impermanent.

।श्चे:म्.लब.जवा.चबर.तयु.रारा

There are people who are about
To have one of their limbs cut off;
And on the day they're dragged away
To the place, they are seized with terror.
Their whole appearance from before is transformed:
Their mouths go dry, eyes bulge, and the rest.

Suppose then that you are taken hold of By the messengers of the Lord of Death, By those monstrous and terrifying creatures, And are stricken by that great fear, the unique pain. If one can go through the change before Then what need then is there ever to speak Of this most desperate of all situations?

वयातातात्वह्यानात्त्रकृष्त्यं स्त्रिं ता ह्रीं न्या कुर्यात्त्र त्या क्षेत्र त्या क्षेत्र त्या क्षेत्र त्या कुर्यात्त्र क्षेत्र त्या कुर्यात्र कुर्यात्त्र कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्त्र कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्त्र कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्त्र कुर्यात्य कुर्य कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्य कुर्य कुर्यात्य कुर्य कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्य कुर्यात्य कुर्य क्या कुर्य कुर्य क

This brings us to our description of the reason why great fear will come. There are kinds of people who are about to undergo some punishment where they will have one of their limbs cut off; on the day that the guards drag them away to the place where the sentence is to be carried out, they are seized with terror. Their whole appearance is transformed from what it was before: their mouths go dry from the fear, their faces go pale, their eyes bulge from their sockets, and the rest.

Suppose now that you are taken hold of by the messengers of the Lord of Death, by monstrous and terrifying creatures from another realm altogether. And suppose as well that you are stricken by that great fear, by the unique pain of death itself. If people who are about to have nothing more than a limb cut off go through the change we just spoke of before, then what need is there ever to speak of the incredible terror that you will, in this most desperate of all situations, come to experience? This is another reason why you should feel regret for the wrong things you have done.

Where is there now anyone who can
Save me completely from this horror?
Your face takes on a look of terror,
Your eyes open wide with panic,
And you turn in every direction
To look for someone who can help.
You realize that there is no one to protect you,
No one in any direction at all,
And the darkness then comes and envelops you.
In this place, there is no one at all who can protect you;
At that moment nothing you can do for yourself.

यात्वर्तत्रःवित्। यर्वा, च्रीका, च्रीका, च्रीका, च्रीका, च्राका, च्रीका, च्र

Here now is the fourth part: the description of how, in your future life, you will be tormented by pain. And once you have taken your birth in the hells, and you see the hellguards coming for you, then will you be overcome with fear, and scream out, "Ah! Where is there now anyone who can save me completely from this horror?" Your face takes on a look of terror, your eyes open wide with panic, and you turn in every direction to look for someone who can help. You can look, but then you realize that there is no one to protect you, no one in any direction at all, and then the darkness comes and envelops you. Thus it is that you must, from this very moment, take refuge in the Three Jewels. Once you are in this place, in the hells, there is no one at all who can protect you from the terrors of the hells, there is at that moment absolutely nothing that you can do for yourself. And so you should, right now, make efforts in those practices which can save you from the terror later.

THE FORCE OF THE FOUNDATION

श्र्रात्त्र में त्या यो स्वार प्रति । प्रति स्वार प्रति । स्वार प्रति ।

With this we have reached our explanation of the second the four forces, which is the force of the foundation. We proceed in three steps: instructions on seeking refuge in the Three Jewels from this very moment; seeking help in the sons and daughters of the Victors, those who possess the power of prayers; and carrying out their wishes, once you have taken refuge in them.

|दे.प्रस्कुत्ययः वर्ष्यः स्वरः स्वरं स्वरं । |स्वरं प्रस्कुत्यः प्रदेशः पर्देशः प्रदेशः स्वरं । |दे प्रसः केतः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः प्रदेशः स्वरं । |दे प्रसः केतः प्रदेशः स्वरं । स्वरं ।

The Victorious Buddhas, the Saviors of all living kind, Exert themselves in order to protect beings. Thus it is that you should take refuge today itself, In those of great power, who remove every kind of fear.

Here is the first. Once you have taken birth in the lower realms, you can seek for some kind of protection, but you will find none. *The Victorious Buddhas, the Saviors of all living kind, exert themselves* in advance, *in order to protect* every sentient *being,* and they possess a consummate ability to achieve this protection. *Thus it is that you should take refuge* quickly, *today itself, in those of great power, who* have the ability to *remove every kind of fear.*

|२े.मुबेभ्रस्य स्थाः स्

You should as well take total refuge In the Dharma which they have grasped completely, The Dharma which eliminates this cycle's every fear, As well as in the assembly of bodhisattvas. विश्वास्त्रः स्वर्षे ।

स्वास्त्रः स्वर्षे ।

स्वस्त्रः स्वर्षे ।

You should as well take total refuge in the Dharma which they, the Victorious Buddhas, have grasped completely, the Dharma jewel which, when you rely on it properly, eliminates every fear in this cycle of life. And you should do so too with the assembly of bodhisattvas who have been able to reach the state of a realized being. You should accept them as companions in helping you to practice the path.

| द्याः दे १ दहेयायः स्याः इयः भ्रूयाः प्रथा |ग्राद:5:पवर:य:पद्या:वेद:यद्या Jaea:ঘর:ব্রুহম:অ:ঘর্মা:ঈর:শুমা |पर्यायो:खुर्यादे:र्युव्य:पर:पश्ची| वियाबाह्याक्षेरायायायाया । शुरु र रू या भेवारा सर्वोद र दे त्या प्यट । १९३१ वर्ग ८ रे अ ते रे ५ त वे ५। ।श्रेवाः स्वः चन्वाः यः चश्चुनः मृः वार्वेता विस्त्रम्यास्य स्थास्य स्थ्रीत स्थ्रीत स्थ्रीत स्थाप । याधी श्रेट में द्या दट है। <u>|র্বাঝ:美.ফু.পর্যাধ:রপ্রপার-রে।</u> <u>। भुवशः केंवः क्षेटः वशः देः देदः वर्षेत्।</u> ।यार लेया अर्बेर दश याविद हे थी।

र्मित्र, या. स्याया स्थान्य स

And so I offer myself to the Excellent One.
I, myself, offer this body of mine to Gentle Voice.
I call out in a voice from a desperate situation,
I cry out to the savior Loving Eyes,
The one who lives in compassion, who is free of all error;
And I beg you to protect me,
A person who had committed great bad deeds.

I seek protection in all those saviors Whose hearts are filled with great compassion: I cry out, from my heart to the realized pair Named "Essence of Space" and "Essence of Earth."

I take refuge as well in the One with the Diamond; When those full of hate, such as the messengers of death, Catch sight of him, they're filled with fear, And forced to flee in every direction.

श्चीयः तः दश्याश्चायः श्चियाशः हैं के श्वाप्त्रं श्वायः स्थाः श्वीयः श्वार्ष्ट् व्यायः स्थाः श्वीयः या स्थाः श्वीयः या स्थाः श्वीयः या स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः या स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः या स्थाः या स्थाः या स्थाः या स्थाः स्थाः या स्थाः या स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः या स्थाः स्

I feel absolute terror over the fears of the lower realms, and so I offer myself to the Excellent One (Samantabadra), that son of the Victors who possesses the power of prayers, and beg him to protect me from these fears. I myself—that is, without the urging of anyone else at all—offer this body of mine as well to Gentle Voice (Manjushri), with thoughts of great faith. And I call out in the voice from a desperate and frightening situation, I cry out, to that one who accomplishes the aims of others in two ways—with perfect spontaneity and in an uninterrupted flow: to the one who lives in compassion, who is free of all error, to the savior—whose name is Loving Eyes (Avalokiteshvara). And how is it that I cry out? In the words, "I beg you to protect me, a person who has committed great bad deeds." Just so do I seek protection in all those saviors whose hearts are filled with great compassion: those realized bodhisattvas such as the pair named "Essence of Space" (Akashagarba) and "Essence of Earth" (Kshitigarba), and so too Loving One (Maitreya), and the Ender of Obstacles (Nivarana Vishkambi). "I cry out, from my heart, so please, protect me." And finally I take refuge in the One with the Diamond, in the Holder of the Diamond (Vajrapani). When those full of hate living beings—when those such as the messengers of death or the hellguards—catch sight of him, they are filled with fear, and are forced to flee in every direction.

> विद्यायायासुरात्रीयायायायायायास्या विद्रायासुर्यायायास्यास्या विद्रायास्यास्यास्यास्यास्या विद्रायायास्यास्यास्या

I have, up till now, acted against your wishes: Now though I have seen the great terrors And so I take refuge in you, and beg you To remove my fears with all speed.

यः अः चुर्याः यः वे विद्याः वे विद्याः विद्याः । यात्राः विद्याः । यात्राः विद्याः । यात्राः विद्याः । यात्राः विद्याः विद्याः । यात्राः । यात्राः विद्याः । यात्राः व

यह्मेश्रामाश्चीर दिन्याया स्त्रीत्वर स्त्राचीर स्त्रीत्वर स्त्रीत

I have, up till now, acted against your wishes: I have committed negative actions, and I have failed to engage in positive actions. Now though I have seen the great terrors of the limitless cycle of life, and the lower realms. And so I take refuge, and commit myself to carrying out your every wish concerning those things which I should take up, and those things which I should give up. I beg you to remove my fears with all speed.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Five: The Four Forces of Purification, Part Two; Rejoicing; Asking the Lamas to Teach and to Stay; How To Dedicate

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chubsems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

THE FORCE OF THE ANTIDOTE

तत्। प्रमानविद्यान्त्रम् निर्मित्ति । नेमान श्रुन्य स्त्रिन्य प्रमान स्त्री । निर्मित्य प्रमान स्त्रिन्य स्त्रिन्य स्त्रिन्य स्त्रिन्य स्त्रिन्य स्त्रिन्य स्त्रिन्य स्त्रम्य स्त्रिन्य स्त्रम्य स्त्रम्

Here next is our expanded explanation of the third of the four forces: the force of the activity of applying an antidote. Here there are two parts: the reason why it is fitting for you to make efforts in purifying yourself of your bad deeds, and why it is fitting to do so quickly. The first of these parts has itself two points: using the metaphor of a patient in order to demonstrate why you must purify yourself of your bad deeds quickly, and then using the metaphor of a cliff to demonstrate why you must purify yourself. The former of these contains three sections: setting forth the metaphor and what it refers to; a

description of the very serious problems caused by the illness of the three poisons, and of the rarity of the medicine used to cure them; and finally why it is therefore appropriate to follow the advice of the supreme physician, the Teacher.

वित्राम्याः स्याः यह्यायः स्याः यक्ति। वित्रान्तिः स्याः यत्वितः स्याः स्याः

Even in a case where you're endangered By some normal illness, you must still Follow the advice of a physician. There's no need to mention then What you should do in the clutches Of the disease of a thousand evils, Of liking things and the rest.

यात्वर्त्तरः रुवाश्वर्षां क्विताचवः चव्यव्यव्यक्षेत्रः चित्वर्त्तरः चित्वरः चित्रः च

Even in a case where you are endangered by some normal illness—that is, where the components such as wind or bile within your body are in a state of disturbance, and you have reason to fear that this might be fatal—you must still follow the advice of a physician, as a method for curing your disease. People like you and I though have been in the clutches of the greatest and most chronic disease of all, the three poisons of liking things and the rest, constantly, for time with no beginning. And these three are a disease which acts as the source for many thousands and millions of evils. If we would listen to the advice of a physician in the case of the normal disease, then there is no need to mention how fitting it would be for us to follow the antidote that has been prescribed for us

by the highest of all physicians, by the victorious Buddhas, as an antidote for removing our sickness. Therefore it is fitting for us to make great efforts in applying the antidotes for negative deeds.

स्तित्राश्चर्यायाश्चरत्यः श्चर्यायाश्चरः वर्षा भिर्म्यायाश्चरित्रः श्चर्यायाश्चरः वर्षा भिर्म्यायाश्चरं चर्त्वः श्चर्यायाश्चरः वर्षा भिर्म्यायाश्चरं चर्त्वः श्चर्यायाश्चरः वर्षाः

Even a single instance of these is enough To waste all the human beings in our world, And you will never find anywhere at all Another medicine that can treat them.

तत्रः यह या हे दे स्त्रां स्त

Even a single instance of these deeds such as anger at a bodhisattva *is enough* to waste all the human beings living in our world; that is, to send them to the hells. Where then could you ever find an antidote, other than the holy words that impart teachings such as how to practice the path—where could you find any other medicine for treating these great harms? You could search everywhere, even in the realms of the worldly god named Pure One, or other such beings, but still never find another; and thus it is extremely rare.

नित्रः सुद्रायः श्रमः सुद्रायः स्त्रीत्रः यात्रमः स्त्रीत्रः यात्रमः स्त्रीत्रः यात्रमः स्त्रीत्रः यात्रमः स्त

The Omniscient One is a physician for this; He's given instructions for uprooting all pains, Though we fail to follow and concentrate. It's incredibly ignorant, disgraceful.

भ्रमश्रभ्रास्त्रम् वर्षे भ्रमश्रभ्रम् वर्षे भ्रमश्रभ्रम् वर्षे भ्रमश्रभ्रम् वर्षे भ्रमश्रभ्रम् वर्षे भ्रमश्रभ् भ्रम्भः स्त्रम् वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे भ्रम्भः स्त्रम् वर्षे वर्षे

Here is the third point. *The Omniscient One is a physician for this* illness; he is one who removes all of it, all the sickness of the mental afflictions, and who has spoken the *instructions for uprooting all the pains* of these afflictions. We *though fail to follow* these instructions, and *concentrate* on the causes that keep us in the cycle of life endlessly, that throw us to the lower realms. This is, as the text says, "incredibly ignorant," meaning a situation which is *disgraceful*. As such you must, from the bottom of your heart, go for refuge in the Teacher, and practice the teachings of this Teacher in the proper way.

|लेब्र-५८-योलट-ब्र-१डी-८य्थि। |ट्ययो-क्ट्-इ्ट्-ट्-डीट-य-ली |ययो-क्ट-योब्ब-तर-डी-ट्यूब-बी |योलट-ब्र-ब-ब्र-इ्-डि-लंब्ट-1

A person must be very cautious Even of small, ordinary cliffs; There is no need to say then That we must take care around Those many thousands of yojana high, And where a fall means a very long time.

योलट साम्राम्य योट ता स्वेट दे तायर स्वेट देयोग देश यो हुर तर त्यीर यप स्वाप स्वाप स्वाप स्वाप स्वाप स्वाप स्व

र्मायाः स्ट्रिंट स्वार् अयाः अर्के द्रांच से द्रायाः स्ट्रिं स्वार् स्वार् स्वार् स्वार स

A person must be very cautious whenever there is any danger of falling even from one of those small, ordinary cliffs, the kind around a mountain or the like—the type of cliff where, if you fall off, all you can hurt is one of your arms or legs. There is no need to say then that you must be cautious about the kind of cliffs such as the one which is 32,000 yojana high [about 154,000 miles, or the distance at which the hell of No Respite is said to be located below the earth]. This is what the expression "many thousands of yojana" is meant to represent; a special kind of cliff from which, once you fall, you must stay at the bottom for a very long time. This too is a reason why you must make efforts in applying the antidotes for the mental afflictions.

स्यीयम् भ्रम्भ न्यात्र्यं न्यात्यं न्या

Here next is the discussion of why you must purify yourself quickly. This section has two parts of its own: instructions to make efforts in applying the antidotes to negative deeds, beginning today itself; and an explanation of why, since there is no reason at all that we can feel free of the threat of suffering, it is inappropriate to feel laziness about practicing the path.

It is not right to relax and think,
"I will never die right now, today;"
For without a doubt the time will come
When you have disappeared.

पर-विश्वी मिन्नेद्र-विश्वास्त्य-विश्वास्त्य-विश्वास्त्य-विश्वस्त्य-विश्वस्त्य-विश्वस्त्य-विश्वस्त्य-विश्वस्त्य-विश्वस्त्र-विश

Here is the first of the two. You might think to yourself, "Admittedly I should make some efforts in applying the antidotes; but I think I will do so next month, or perhaps next year." The correct thing to do though would be to start making efforts today itself, because *it is not* something *right* to simply live in laziness, and *to relax* without making any efforts towards the antidotes, thinking to oneself, "I will never die right now, today." There is absolutely no certainty though that you will not die today, and we can fairly say that, without a doubt, the time that you have died and disappeared will come tomorrow. Thus you should stop this tendency to be lazy, and begin to make your efforts today itself.

|गान्तेःगादेःश्चेदःधेवाःत्रमा वदेःसदसःदेदःवेःवदेःग्वःबेसा ।ग्वःवःसेःतःवाद्दःसेस्।

It is just as the Epistle of Kanika states:

It's no good thing for a human being Ever to say, "I'll do it tomorrow;" The tomorrow when you are no longer here Is a day that beyond any doubt will come.

> वित्वाः यः श्रेः वहेवाशःशुः धेशः निह्नाः वित्रेः यशः हेः स्ट्रूरः देशः घरः विश्वा वित्रें देशे : चर्तरः श्रेतः वशुरः द्या वित्रें देशे : चर्त्वाः धेतः वशुरः द्या वित्रें व्याप्ते : व्यापते : व्यापते

Who was it that granted you the power not to fear? How could you ever gain any certain freedom That you would, beyond doubt, not disappear? Why is it you sit there relaxed?

प्राप्तः तर्त्वाः प्राप्तः व्यक्तः प्राप्तः व्यक्तः प्राप्तः व्यक्तः व्यवक्तः व्यवक्

Here is the second point. You might then say, "Even if it's true that we're going to die, it's no use to be afraid of it—there is no point to being frightened." But you are here in the midst of the fear that comes from seeing and hearing of the deaths of everyone else, and the fear that you might fall into the lower realms. So who was it, what holy being, that blessed you and granted you the power not to fear: to say that, despite all this, there is "no point to being frightened," no need to fear death, or your own bad deeds? The fact is that there is no being who could grant you any such power. So if you fail to make efforts towards applying the antidotes, then how could you ever gain any certain freedom from your negative deeds, and from death itself? You never could be free. And then when you died you would, beyond any doubt, disappear. So why is it that you fail to make any efforts in applying the antidotes, and why is it that you sit there, relaxed, lost to the effects of laziness? It is wrong to do so, and thus you should make every effort in practicing the path.

THE FORCE OF RESTRAINT

र्वे.क्रुया.त.जन्न.बर.तदु.बयन्न.ज.क्यर.तत्। रमायक्य.वत्। ।रट.त्.ज.यक्षिम। र्र्य.मुर.तदु.क्रुया.त.झट.य.रटा। क्षेत्र.मक्त्य.यीय. क्रुंम.त.रटा। क्रूंम.येन्यत्यान्न.त.रटा। मधिय.तम.यान्न्जा.यन्न.क्रुंम.तम.तम्.क्रुंया.तम. ।यक्षे.त.क्षेत्र.ता.जन्म.स्त्रेया.तदु.क्र्यंयम.ज.यान्न्यम। क्रुंया.त.ज.वर्ग्चर.तम.स्त्रेय.कर.

Next is our expanded explanation of the fourth of the four forces: the force of restraining yourself from bad deeds in the future. Here there are three parts: restraining yourself from negative actions because of your feelings of regret;

purifying yourself of what you have already done; and pledging to restrain from negative actions, which is done once you have requested holy beings to listen to your resolution. There are two sections to the first of these parts: giving up bad deeds, which are meaningless; and making efforts, day and night, to practice the methods for freeing oneself from negative actions.

The first section has two steps of its own: why being attached to your possessions is so inappropriate, since they are in no way reliable; and why it is wrong to be attached to relatives and the like. Here is the first.

।श्वंत्रक्षः त्यादः द्राव्यायः यश् ।यद्याः त्रेः देः त्यः अद्द्रः त्वेत्रः त्रश ।यद्याः त्रेः देः त्यः अद्द्रः त्वेत्रः त्रश ।श्वंत्रः त्यादः द्राद्यायः यसः पुरुष

All which you have enjoyed Up to this point has fallen apart; And what further do you have? All because of your craving for these, You've acted against your Lama's wishes.

हिट स्वाबाद्या विट्या हुँ द्राया प्रत्या विट प्रवादा प्रत्या विद्या व

All of the possessions which you have enjoyed up to this point in the cycle of suffering have been unreliable; that is, they have fallen apart. And can we say that, among those possessions which you still have now, there are any further ones which have any essence? No, none at all. And yet, all because of your craving and attachment for these objects with no essence, you have acted against the wishes of your Lama, and committed negative deeds. You must feel regret for this.

You will give up this, that was While you lived, and just so With friends and relatives; Then go on alone to who knows where. Of what use then are any of Your friends or enemies?

Here is the second point. You are going to have to give up everything: this body that you have here, while you are alive, and just so your friends and relatives as well. And then you will have to go on alone, to "who knows where;" that is, to a place which you cannot now know for sure. And so what is the use of any of your friends or enemies? They can be of no help at all, and thus it is wrong for you to feel any attachment for them.

वित्रेन्त्रेन्ययः विवाध्ययः विद्याः व

Suffering comes from negative actions; It is fitting that you spend all your time, Day and night, devoted to only This contemplation, and think to yourself: "How can I gain definite freedom?"

Here next is the point about making efforts night and day. The *suffering* of the hells and the like all *comes from negative actions* such as taking life. As such *it is fitting that you spend all your time, day and night, devoted only to this contemplation* of good and bad deeds, of the principles of actions and their consequences, *thinking to yourself, "How can I gain definite freedom* from all these sufferings?" If you are unable to find with certainty, if you are unable to contemplate deep within your heart, the principles of actions and their consequences, then you will never be able to grasp with any certainty, with any of the kind of certainty which pleases the victorious Buddhas, any spiritual teaching at all.

Therefore it is right that you make great efforts in all these things. There are certain people who claim to have reached the point where they grasp emptiness clearly, and who still do not consider the principles of actions and their consequences to be of any importance. This is obviously a complete misunderstanding, and reflects a failure to grasp clearly the fact that emptiness is a reflection of dependent origination.

|प्रद्याः वै: श्रेः विश्वः या है: श्रुयाः प्रश्न |प्रदः प्रविद्याः वः श्रः व्यव्यः । |प्रदशः प्रदेः श्रेयाः प्रायादः प्रवेदः प्रश्ना |प्रदः प्रदः प्रदः प्राय्योक्षः प्रः द्वस्रश्ना Deeds which are wrong by nature,

And deeds which are forbidden, Any bad deed at all that you might

In dark ignorance, due to your failure To grasp, ever committed at all.

Here next is the part about purifying yourself of what you have already done. We proceed in two steps, concerning the thing it is that you purify, and then the way in which you purify yourself of it. You are purifying yourself first of those deeds which are wrong by nature: those that are negative actions no matter who commits them; that is, regardless of whether the person in question is one with vows or not. And secondly there are the deeds which are wrong because the Buddha has forbidden them: those which are wrong only for those who have taken vows. What you are purifying yourself of is whichever of these you may have committed; in short, you are purifying yourself of any bad deed at all that you may ever have committed, out of your lack of understanding and your dark ignorance, your failure to grasp, the principles of actions and their consequences.

नि:र्या.बशका.बर.यत्येशनार्ये। नि:र्या.बंधर.कंया.यक्ता.यह्याश्वास्त्राश्चेश नि:र्या.बशका.बर्या.यक्ता.यह्याश्वास्त्राश्चेश नि:र्या.बशका.बर्या.यह्याश्वास्त्रायश्चेश

You stand here in the Protector's direct presence, Joining your palms at your breast, And with a sense of fear for suffering Prostrate, over and over again, And thus undertake to purify Yourself of all these.

त्रश्चात्रात्री यद्यास्य स्वाप्त स्वापत स्

स्या वर्षका है भैया या ने नया बस्य उन प्रवास यम प्रयोदि।

To purify these deeds you stand here in the direct presence of the Protectors, before the Buddhas and their sons and daughters; you express yourself by joining your palms at your breast. In your thoughts you develop a sense of fear for suffering. And then you prostrate, over and over again, and undertake thus to purify yourself of all these negative actions.

वित्तेत्रः यः इस्याः ग्रीसः यत्राः वित्तेत्रः यात्राः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः य वित्ते वित्तः यात्रायायायाः यात्रः यात्र वित्ते वित्ते वित्ते यात्रः यात्र

The bad deeds I have committed, my Guides, I ask you to consider mistakes.
They are nothing good, and from this moment on, I'll never commit any single one.

Next is the pledge to restrain ourselves. For this reason I make the following request to the *Guides: "The bad deeds I have committed* are mistakes, and *I ask you to consider them mistakes.* The bad things I have done *are nothing good, and from this moment on,* even at the cost of my life, *I will never commit any single one* of them at all, ever again." By doing so we stop the flow of our bad deeds, and restrain ourselves from them again.

The teachings of the Buddha, and the commentaries upon them, present a great number of ways in which we can clean ourselves of our bad deeds. The one antidote which is totally complete though is this purification, this practice of using all four forces together to do the purifying. It is stated in a number of scriptures—for example, in the *Blaze of Reasoning* and in the *Great Commentary to the Perfection of Wisdom in Eight Thousand Verses*—that this practice can erase even those bad deeds which are definite to lead to the experience of a karmic result.

People like you and I have no great knowledge of the various laws of actions and their consequences. Even that very little bit which we do understand we are unable to put into practice as we should. Every single day then we commit negative actions in a great variety of different ways. Because of this we must follow the path of purifying ourselves of our bad deeds on a continual basis. And we should make efforts in the practice especially with the intention of purifying ourselves of those thoughts and actions which block us from being able to develop the true wish for enlightenment.

जायवियोश। विक्रीं यदुः क्र्योश्वाशीं यव्दे स्त्र्। यथा। जिश्वास्याः जूरा ग्रीशाविष्याः सायारः ययीशाः सा। विष्णीश्वास्याः स्याः स्थाः स्था

I was crushed by the mistake Of being filled with the arrogance Of deluded desire and jealousy, And it kept me from reaching The highest wish of all.

Before the Protectors then, From the depths of my heart, I confess every error That I may have made In thought or word or deed.

This is just a brief verse to summarize the chapter.

। कुंचा.त.यवयात्रात्युः खुंद्रः याक्षेत्रः याद्र्या। । चिंदः क्ष्यः क्षेत्रश्रात्रः प्रदेशः याद्रेशः याद्र्याः यात्रश

This concludes the second chapter

Of the Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life,

Entitled "Purifying oneself of negative deeds."

Here lastly we cover the name of the chapter. This then is the explanation of the second chapter, the chapter on purifying oneself of negative deeds, from the "Entry Point for the Sons and Daughters of the Victorious Buddhas," a commentary upon the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life*.

क्ष्यःग्रीःक्षीं व्यवसायात्रा, स्टायत्। स्टायः स्टा। वस्ताः स्वाग्रीःक्षीं वयं साग्रीः स्वाप्ताः स्वाप्तः स्वापतः स्वापत

Here is the second major section, which is actually acquiring the wish for enlightenment, once you have already assembled the conducive conditions for its development: rejoicing in good deeds, and so on. This section has two

parts, which are an explanation of the text of the chapter, and then a note on the name of the chapter. There are three steps to the first of these two parts: what to do for the preliminaries, for the main stage, and then for the conclusion. The preliminaries are five—rejoicing in good deeds; urging teachers to turn the wheel of the Dharma; requesting holy beings not to pass into "nirvana;" dedicating good deeds; and, as a step towards the practice of the perfection of wisdom, cultivating the state of mind in which we give up our bodies, our possessions, and the power of all the good we have done.

REJOICING

Rejoicing we will cover in three steps: rejoicing in those good deeds which act as a cause for birth in the higher realms, and in the result they cause; rejoicing in good deeds which act as a cause for freedom alone, and in the result they cause; and rejoicing in good deeds which act as a cause for unsurpassed enlightenment, and in the result which they cause.

|र्यायः यशःह्रशःशुःधेः प्रदेशः वी |श्रुवाः वश्रूयः प्रवः प्रवः प्रदेशः वाद्यशः या |श्रुवाः वश्रूयः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः या |श्रुवाः वश्रूयः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः या |स्रोवः वश्रूयः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः प्रवः या

I rejoice, with joy, in the virtuous deeds Which relieve the torment of the lower realms For every being; and in the fact That these suffering beings could ever come To live in happiness.

इ.ज्याश्च श्रंश.री.ह्र श्रं.ज्ञ.स्य.यायश्च श्वात्त.यायश्च श्वात्त.यायश्च श्वात्त.यायश्च श्वात्त.यायश्च श्वात्त यायश्च श्व

Here is the first of the three. *I rejoice in the good deeds which* act as a cause to help *relieve the torment of the lower realms for every being* in the cycle of suffering; and I rejoice as well in those which act as a cause for all of them to achieve a very special form of birth in the higher realms. I also rejoice in the result

which these causes bring about: I rejoice in the fact that *these suffering beings* could ever come to live in the happiness of the higher realms. How do I rejoice? I think to myself, with thoughts of joy, about what a wonderful thing it is that these good deeds exist in the world.

|देश.तर.वर.ज.लु.रट.ट्र.| |जेश.२४.जेंट्र.चठु.केंचे.चकंज.जन| |ट्रे.ज.हंश.बी.लु.रट.ट्र.| |विट.क्य.बीर.चीर.टचु.चन्नचनाता

I rejoice in their having collected together Good deeds which act as enlightenment's cause. I rejoice in living beings' certain freedom From the sufferings of cyclic life.

र्मेयो.पर्मेल.जन्न.इस.तर.बर.प्रेस्टिर.वर्म.ब्र्य.त.टे.ज.लट.लु.रट.ट्र.। यनयोन्न.त.टे.ज.लट.ह्रम.श्रे.लु.रट.ट्र.। ।टेट्र.वर्चन्न.ये.जेन.२४.४मन्न.वर्ष्ट्र.यटु. विश्वेत्र.त.ट्री ४४.रट.यी.येट.क्य.ग्री.क्रिंर.वर्चेत्र.यटु.वर.त.क.नवंत्र.य्री.रय्राच्यः

Here is the second. *I* also *rejoice in* the fact that beings have *collected together good deeds* such as those which are consistent with reaching freedom: those deeds *which act as a cause for* the *enlightenment* of the listeners and self-made Buddhas. *I rejoice* as well *in* the result which these good deeds bring about: *the certain freedom from the sufferings of cyclic life* which *living creatures* can attain through these deeds—that is, I rejoice in the fact that they will achieve nirvana.

|र्मायःयश्हेशःशुःधेःस्टःर्दः|
|श्चेयाशःवश्वःशःयवरःधेःस्टःर्दः|
|श्चेयाशःवश्चेदःद्योःयःकुःसर्क्टःद्रः।
|श्चेयाशःवश्चेदःद्योःयःकुःसर्क्टःद्रः।
|श्चेयाशःवश्चेदःद्योःयःकुःसर्क्टःद्रः।
|श्चेयाशःवश्चेदःद्योःयःकुःसर्क्टःद्रः।

So too I rejoice in the enlightenment
Of those who protect, and in the levels
Of the sons and daughters.
I rejoice with gladness in the ocean
Of the goodness of the wish for enlightenment
Which brings every living being to happiness;
I rejoice too in what they undertake
To help all living kind.

Here is the third. So too I rejoice in the total enlightenment which has been reached by those who protect all other living beings; and in the ten levels which the different sons and daughters of the victorious Buddhas have attained. I rejoice as well in the causes for all these states, in the veritable ocean of the goodness of the wish for enlightenment: the thought to attain highest enlightenment in order to bring every living being to happiness. Beyond this I rejoice in the actual deeds of the beings with this wish: in the activities they undertake to help all living kind. I rejoice, with gladness, and I dwell in the faith of admiration, which is mixed in my mind with feelings of great happiness.

ASKING THE LAMAS TO TEACH

क्रियां अ: क्रियां या क्रियं या विकार क्रियं या विकार या क्रियं या विकार क्रियं या वि

I join my palms at my breast and make Supplication to all the Buddhas in every Corner of the universe. I request them to light the lamp of the Dharma In order to illuminate every one Of the living beings who wander confused In suffering and darkness.

वर ततु त्यश्राचीश्वराचर चिर्तातु जीर ह्योश्ची क्ष्याची स्थान स्था

Here is the second. I think of *all the Buddhas in every corner of the universe* who have only recently achieved their Buddhahood, and who have yet to teach the Dharma. Physically *I join my palms at my breast and*, with great respect, *make supplication to them*. What is the goal of my supplication? *I request them to light the lamp of the Dharma*, of both the Dharma in the minds of people and the Dharma in the form of words, *in order to illuminate* the path which frees *every living being* from *wandering confused in suffering and the darkness* of ignorance.

ASKING THE LAMAS TO STAY

| प्रभूषःपः मूर्यः येद्वः प्रकृत्यः यः यार्थेषा | प्रकृत्वः प्रभूर्यः प्रभावः ये | प्रकृत्वः प्रभूर्यः प्रभावः ये | स्रुषः प्रभूषः प्रभावः ये

I join my palms at my breast and make Supplication to those Victorious Ones Who've determined to pass into "nirvana." I beg them not to leave behind All these living beings so blind, And to remain for countless eons.

स्रम् यायाम्या पर्दः के दः दः प्रम्रायः प्राद्यः या स्रायः प्राद्यः या स्रायः या स्रायः या स्रायः या स्रायः य त्र्याः पः प्रतः म्रायः स्रायः या स्रायः स्रायः या स्रायः या स्रायः या स्रायः या स्रायः या स्रायः या स्रायः य विष्यः या प्रायः या स्रायः या

Here is the third point. I also join my palms at my breast and make supplication to those Victorious Ones who have determined to pass on into "nirvana." All these living beings are blinded—their eyes of wisdom are blinded—by ignorance, and I beg the Victors not to leave them in this condition: I ask them to remain for countless eons, so that they might remove from these beings the darkness of ignorance.

DEDICATION

र्र्न, र्यक्रिया प्रति । क्रिया प्रति । वर्षे प्रति । वर्

There are four parts to the fourth point: dedication in general, dedication for the sake of the sick, dedication so that hunger and thirst may be removed, and dedication so that everything they ever wish for comes true.

Through performing all these activities, Great goodness have I gathered. I pray that, by this virtue, The pain of every single living Creature may be removed.

Here is the first of the four. *I have gathered* together a *great* deal of *goodness* through performing all these activities: through everything from making offerings on up to the supplication just mentioned. And *I pray that, by this virtue, the* pain of every single living creature may be removed.

विर्मे निव्दान्ति । स्वर्मे स

I pray as well that I may become The medicine, and the physician, As well as nurses for all who are sick, Until the day they are cured.

Here is the second. *I pray as well that,* through the power of these same acts of virtue, *I may* myself *become the medicine, and the* one great *physician, and the nurses for all these sick* living beings, *until the day they are cured* of their illness.

I pray that a shower of food and drink May fall and that, when the intermediate eon Of famine arrives, I may become Food and drink as well.

Here is the third. *I pray* as well *that there falls a shower of food and drink*—that is, a whole variety of sustenance and refreshment—all with the power to remove every kind of harm in the form of hunger or thirst. There are three types of intermediate eons, and one of them is *the intermediate eon of famine*. *I pray that, when*ever this kind of eon *arrives, I may become food and drink,* and thus be able to remove the hunger and thirst of every living creature who needs me.

One that can never be exhausted,
For all living beings who are poor, and lack.
May I become too anything they need
Or want, an entire range
Of the different necessities for life,
And so appear to their very eyes.

यात्वन् क्षेत्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्र क्षेत्वेत् क्षेत्र क्

Here is the fourth. I pray too that I may become a great treasure house, one that can never be exhausted, for all those living beings who are poor, and lack the things they need. I pray that I can become anything they need and want, an entire range of different necessities for life, and then appear before their very eyes, without any effort at all to make it happen.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Six: Taking Joy

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chub-sems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

The third part in our explanation of the actual body of the third chapter of the *Guide* is the conclusion. Here there are two sections: practicing the taking of joy yourself, and bringing joy to others. The first of these has two sections of its own: how the wish achieves your own goals, and how it achieves the goals of others. The first of these will come in three steps: taking joy by uplifting your heart; practicing care once your have attained the wish; and practicing the taking of joy, over having attained a wish that is very hard to find.

| भेस्याक्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः यो चेद्यः यक्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः यो चेद्यः यक्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः यो चेद्यः यक्षेत्रः विद्यः यो चेद्यः यो चेद्यः यक्षेत्रः विद्यः यो चेद्यः यो चिद्यः यो चिद्यः यो चिद्यः यो चेद्यः यो चेद्यः यो चेद्यः यो चिद्यः यो चि

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life Readings Six

Those of intelligence should in this way Then attain the wish for enlightenment With great devotion, and in conclusion Lift up their hearts, in the following manner, To engage in an ever increasing way.

Those of intelligence, meaning bodhisattvas, should in this way then attain the two forms of the wish for enlightenment, and attain it so it is firm, through thoughts that are filled with great devotion, and gladness, and faith. And they should then, in conclusion, undertake as well a method to keep this state of mind from being lost, and to increase it ever further. It is in order to engage in this state of mind in an ever increasing way that your should take joy, and uplift your heart, in the following manner. [The Entry Point seems to read 'jug here for mjug by mistake.]

With this moment my life has become fruitful; I have truly achieved a human life Today I have been born into the family of the Buddhas; Now I have become a child of the Buddhas.

|इ.र्धर.७१४। श्रम्भान्धेर.हर.र्ज्ञ्गताचेर.क्य.श्रम्भान्यर्थे। ।श्रद्धाः वित्रः वित्रः

र्यायः यः प्रश्लेषाः प्रश्लेषाः

How is it that we uplift our hearts? With this moment—that is, at the point where I develop the wish and take the vows—my life has become fruitful; now I have truly achieved a human life, in the sense that I have given meaning to the spiritual leisure and fortune with which I was born. Today I have been born into the family of the Buddhas: I have become a bodhisattva. Practice the feeling of gladness, thinking to yourself, "Now I have become a child of the Buddhas"—for this is the prayer wherein one thinks to oneself, "When is it that I will become a child of the Buddhas?"

|र्नेन्द्रम्यामीयाक्षेत्रस्याम्। |र्नेन्यायान्द्रस्याक्षेत्रस्याक्याक्षेत्रस्याक्षेत्रस्याक्षेत्रस्याक्षेत्रस्याक्षेत्रस्याक्षेत्रस

Now, no matter what, I will undertake Only those actions which are fitting For those who belong to the family, And I will assure that this holy And faultless family is never defiled.

त्रिम् त्यर् तम् विद्।

विकासि वि विकासि वि

Here is the second point. You may wonder whether this act alone is enough. It is not, for you must then make the resolution: "Now, no matter what, I will undertake only those actions of the three doors which are fitting for those who belong to the family of my new fathers, the Buddhas. I will keep my family one which is holy, one which is at all times—in the beginning, and during, and at the end of any action—forever made beautiful: faultless, and filled only with wonderful

qualities. *I will* make every effort I can to assure that my mind is never defiled by breaking my vows—the rules that have been set forth for those that are following the wish both in the form of a prayer, and in the form of action.

द्रवास्त्रक्षेत्रायाक्षेत्र प्रत्यात्वराष्ट्रियात्वर स्वर्था स्वर्य स्वर्था स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्था स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्था स्वर्था स्वर्था स्वर्य

Here is the third point. Suppose a poor and penniless beggar were to find some precious jewel in a pile of garbage. I am just the same, for by "dumb luck"—that is, through simple good fortune—I have been able to develop this precious wish for enlightenment. It is surely only something that has happened through the miraculous power of the Enlightened Ones.

How the wish achieves the goals of others we will cover in three steps as well, describing how it has the power to remove the sufferings of living beings, how it has the power to remove the obstacles that cause these sufferings, and finally how it has the power to accomplish all help and happiness. The first of these three has five parts of its own: descriptions of how the wish destroys the Lord

of Death within every living being; how it destroys poverty; how it destroys illness; how it destroys the general suffering of the cycle of life; and, more particularly, how it destroys the sufferings of the lower realms.

|यर्ज्ञ:यदे:यक्रे:यद्गा:यह्र्यशःग्रीदःयदे। |यर्ज्ञ:यदे:यक्रेंग्ग्राट:यदे:योदःदें।

The supreme nectar of deathlessness, Which acts to destroy the Lord of Death Within every living being, is as well this wish.

पदःसुर्भे स्टर्न्यरःस्रेन्यरः वक्षेत्रः यदे विष्ठे विष्ठे विष्ठेन्य विष्य विष्ठेन्य विष्ये विष्ठेन्य विष्ठेन्य विष्ये विष्ठेन्य विष्ठेन्य विष्ठेन्य विष्ठेन्य विष्ठेन्य विष्ठेन

Here is the first of the five. There is a *supreme nectar of deathlessness*, one *which acts to destroy the Lord of Death within every living being*—which stops this condition of having helplessly to die. And the nectar *is this wish* for enlightenment, because it leads us to the state where there is no aging, and no death.

|वर्चे्। चर्चे : न्तुयः चः श्रेयः चः स्थे| |श्रे: = न्याहेरः स्परः वर्ने : स्थेदः सें|

This same wish is an endless Treasure house which removes The poverty of every living thing.

Here is the second. There is as well an endless treasure house which removes the poverty of every living thing, for it grants never-endingly a wealth of both material things and the Dharma. The treasure too is this same wish for enlightenment.

। श्रुव श्री : सर्वे : स्वे : स्वे : स्वे : स्वे । । स्वे व : स्वे : स्वे : स्वे : स्वे : स्वे ।

This same wish is a supreme medicine Which puts a final end To the illness of living kind.

|याश्वर्यायः है। वर्त्ते प्रवेश्वरः सम्याप्तः स्वरः प्राप्तः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स

Here is the third. There is a supreme medicine which puts a final end to every illness of living kind, and it too is this same wish.

The wish is a great tree which refreshes All those beings who have tired themselves Wandering along the road of cyclic existence.

Here is the fourth. There is a great tree which provides a cool spot that refreshes and clears away the sufferings of all those beings who have tired themselves by wandering along the road of the cycle of existence. This too is the wish.

The wish is a great span
That allows all living beings
To escape from the lower realms.

लट.शुश्रायात्री यस्याय्येत्रात्यत्रात्यात्र्यात्याः श्रृत्यायाः स्त्रीत्यायः स्त्र

Here is the fifth. There is a great span, a bridge, that allows all living beings to escape from the lower realms. This too is the wish.

|बर्म्:पदे:ब्रेंब:ब्रंड्य:प्रमान्द्रःब्रंथ:पदे।

The wish is a moon that rises In the mind, to clear away The mental afflictions That torment living creatures.

क्रेंब्र-भ्रीयःभवतः न्याः वह्स्यस्य ब्रुसः सविः द्वीरः र्रा प्रभुतः सः वर्नेः वर्षेः पविः क्रेंब्र-भ्रोतः स्थाः प्रमुतः स्थाः पविः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्था । प्राक्षेत्रः सः वर्षेः वर्षेः क्रेंब्र-भ्रोतः स्थाः प्रमुतः स्थाः प्रवेतः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः

The power of removing obstacles we will cover in two parts: how the wish removes the obstacles that are mental afflictions, and then how it removes the obstacles to total knowledge. Here is the first. *The wish* for enlightenment *is a moon that rises in the mind, to clear away* with its cool light all the heat of *the mental afflictions*, which *torment living creatures*. This is because it has the power to destroy each and every one of the obstacles which are mental afflictions.

|दर्ते,यदुःशुःश्वाःस्यःस्यःस्य |दर्तेशःवदीयःश्वःशःश्वःसःस्यःस्य

The wish is a great sun That rises to obliterate, To rip out, the cataracts, The lack of knowledge, In every living being.

प्रमुक्त्रपतिः क्र्रेन्द्रम् व्याप्तिः क्रेन्द्रम् व्याप्तिः क्रिन्द्रम् व्यापतिः क्रिन्द्रम् विष्ट्रम् विष्ट्रम्यः विष्ट्रम् विष्ट्रम्यः विष्ट्रम् विष्ट्रम् विष्ट्रम् विष्ट्रम् विष्ट्रम् विष्ट्रम्

Here is the second part. The wish is also a great sun that rises to obliterate—that is, to rip out from its roots—the cataracts of the obstacles to total knowledge in every living being: the lack of knowledge which is not directly related to the mental

afflictions. This is because the state of wisdom which perceives emptiness, and which is further enhanced by great accumulations of good deeds, functions to terminate completely the very seeds of the obstacles to total knowledge.

ग्रीयः श्रीकाः यद्वः त्याः यद्वेत्।

तथा स्वः तः श्रावः व्याः यद्वेतः विदः त्याः यद्वेतः त्यः यद्वेत् । यद्वः यः श्रावः व्याः यद्वः याः यद्वः विदः यः यद्वेत् । यद्वः यः यद्वः यद्व

Here thirdly is how the wish achieves the goals of others, in two stages of how it brings about every kind of benefit, and how it brings about every kind of happiness. *This wish* for enlightenment *is* the very essence, something that has been *distilled from* the great ocean of *the milk of the holy Dharma*, the highest of all spoken words. It has been distilled through the process of *churning* this milk with the great paddle of wisdom which has come from listening and contemplation. It is like a great heap of *the very essence of butter*, a butter that has a special nutritional value, in that it can help everything of any kind of benefit at all to grow. As such, everyone should make efforts to reach this state of mind.

Sentient beings are travelers
Wandering here and there
Along the roads of the three realms,
Hoping to win pleasant experiences.
This wish remains the highest method
Of all for happiness: it brings
Satisfaction to all these travelers,
Every living being.

है। श्रेश्वरावर्धित्रश्चर्यात्री विद्रायम् विद्यायात्र विद्याय वि

Here is the second point. Sentient beings are like travelers who are wandering in the cycle of suffering: they wander here and there along the roads of the three realms, and hope to win all the pleasant experiences of a birth among humans, or the pleasure beings. It is this wish for enlightenment which remains the highest method of all for achieving happiness: it brings satisfaction to all these travelers, every living being. This is because it allows all living kind to reach the higher realms, and definite goodness.

वित्वाः वीशः देः देदः श्चेतः यः श्वस्थः उदः श्चीः विद्याः विद

I stand today in the presence Of all the Protectors. I invite every living creature As my guest, to partake In the very state of Those Who have Gone to Bliss, and in Happiness until they reach it. I call on every pleasure being, On near pleasure beings, and All such creatures, to take joy In this as well. क्यान्तर्भवादः न्यादः न्याक्षः विवाः द्वेशः विवाः द्वेशः विवाः व्यावः वावः वावः व्याः विवाः वर्षः विवाः वर्षः व क्याः पर्वः सर्वे स्वाः विवाः व्याः व्यः व्याः व

With this we have reached how to bring joy to others. *I stand today in the presence of all the Protectors:* the victorious Buddhas, and their sons and daughters. And in your presence *I invite every living creature*, every being, to come here *as my guest*, for I will serve them to their heart's content *the very state of Those Who have Gone to Bliss:* the ultimate culmination of every kind of help and happiness. And *until they reach* this state I offer them as well *to partake*, to their own satisfaction, all the *happiness* that can be found among humans and pleasure beings. And once I have made *this* invitation, *I ask others to take joy as well: I call on every pleasure being*, and *near pleasure being*, and serpent-like naga, *and all such creatures* to feel gladness.

As Master Shantideva's text explains, there are certain preliminaries that must be fulfilled before one can develop the wish for enlightenment. We must purify ourselves of the obstacles which are factors that work against being able to develop the wish, and we must gather together all the factors that are conducive to reaching it. You should understand that this process, of undertaking all the preliminaries and then reaching the wish itself, is the very highest way of all to get the essence out of having achieved this human body and mind, with all their spiritual leisure and fortune. As such we must make great efforts in the practice of these preliminaries.

तरःची । वर्क्ने.चयु.क्र्याकाक्षी.चक्रट्र.तयू। मिला.सेकाची.चका.चर्ज्य्र.तयु.लका.चाक्रया.ची । विटाक्ष्याक्षायाक्षेका.चक्षेट्र.ला.यचर. १२ला.यर्ज्य्र.क्षा.लीका.क्र्यातयु.लेका.क्षेत्र.ट्या.मिला.चयु.याक्षेटा.प्रयागीत्र.क्षेत्र.त्रयु.र्ट्या

All those ones of intelligence
Who have reached a body
With spiritual leisure and fortune
Should make every effort in finding
The two forms of the wish,
For this is the essential point
Of all the highest of words—
The teachings of the Victors,
And the one and only road
Travelled by many millions
Of their sons and daughters too.

This is just a brief verse, to summarize the chapter.

This concludes the third chapter of the Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, entitled "Attaining the Wish for Enlightenment."

जुरि.योशेश.तयु.ययुज.तयू। संश.यहैयो.ट्योश.खेश.यी.य.जाश। येट.क्य.ग्री.शुश्रश.लूटश.शे.योबैट.ययु.जुरे.श्रं. रायोशेश.त.जुर्येयु.शक्य.यु। येट.क्य.शुश्रश.टतयु.श्रेंट्र.त.ज.यहैयो.तयु.संश.यवेट.भीज.

Here finally we cover the name of the chapter. This then is the explanation of the third chapter, the chapter on attaining the wish for enlightenment, from the "Entry Point for the Sons and Daughters of the Victorious Buddhas," a commentary upon the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life*.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Seven: How to Fight the Mental Afflictions, Part One

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chubsems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

The third part, which is taking care to eliminate the mental afflictions, has three divisions: considering the problems of mental afflictions; the reasons why it is wrong to feel discouraged over any hardships one may have to put up with during the process of eliminating the mental afflictions; and practicing the emotion of joy over the fact that, should one make serious efforts to eliminate them, the mental afflictions really are something that can be eliminated completely.

क्री अक्ष्यं में।

प्राचित्र प्राचि

The first of these divisions has three parts of its own: considering how the mental afflictions hurt us; reasons why it is wrong to tolerate the mental afflictions; and developing courage for the task of destroying the afflictions. There are four separate steps to the process of considering how the mental afflictions hurt us: thinking about how they leave us powerless; how they send us to unthinkable suffering; how the time that they hurt us is infinite; and the reasons why it is wrong to make friends with the mental afflictions.

वि:क्रूट:श्रेट:श्रेवाश:द्या:इश्रशःही ।त्राद:सर्ह्र्ट्रशःश्रेद:स्रेद:स्रोद:स्रो ।द्राद:सर्ह्र्ट्रशःश्रद:स्राद्याःहःहेन्वाःस्ट्रः। ।दे:द्या:वीश:यद्याश्रद:स्राहेद:युग:स्ट्रा

The great enemies of anger, desire and the rest Are not creatures with hands, legs, or the like. Neither are they great warriors, or wily masters. So how did it happen, that they Have made me like their slave?

स्ट्रिंदि। स्वान्त्रियाः क्षेत्र प्रत्याः प्रत्याः क्षेत्र प्रत्याः कष्णि प्रत्याः कष्

Our great enemies—"anger and desire and the rest," which incorporates all the primary and secondary mental afflictions—are not some kind of creatures with hands or legs, that could carry weapons in their hands, or the like. Neither are they great warriors, full of energy, or wily masters who can find clever ways to get what they want. So how did it happen, that these mental afflictions have made me powerless, like I were their slave?

| प्रत्याः यो:श्रेस्यः याः याद्यः प्रविदः द्याः | प्रयादः स्रयाः याद्याः याः याद्ये प्रद्ये प्रधाः | प्रेर्थाः याद्यः याद्याः याद्ये प्रदेशः याद्ये प्रधाः याद्ये प्रधाः याद्ये प्रधाः याद्यः याद्ये प्रधाः याद्य

|ग्राम्याः श्रीयः प्रश्चितः प्राम्याः ।

They live in my mind,
And hurt me at their absolute will,
It's completely wrong that I should tolerate,
And not feel anger for them:
My patience with them is a disgrace.

च्र-छेश्र-श्रेग्रायान्त्र्यायान्त्र्यायान्त्र्यायान्त्र्यात्व्यन्त्रः निर्वेश्यः स्वात्रः निर्वेशः स्वात्रः स्वत्रः स्वात्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्यः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्यः स्वत्यः स्वत्रः स्वत्यः स्वत

Here is the second point. The mental afflictions live in my mind, and at their absolute will they hurt me, and drag me to the sufferings of the lower realms, and other kinds of pain. It's completely wrong that I should tolerate them, and not feel anger for them: my patience with them is a disgrace. Therefore I should see the mental afflictions as my foe, and make great efforts to stop them. We should exert ourselves in studying the definitions, divisions, causes, functions, and other details of the mental afflictions, as presented in the treatises on higher knowledge. Most importantly we must think over and over again about the problems which the afflictions bring to us.

वित्रान्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वरंत्तः स्वरंत्तः स्वरंतः स्

|देर-वर्गःस्रदःश्चाःग्रेशःय।

Suppose the mighty pleasure beings, and
Near pleasure beings, all rose to be my enemy;
Still they would never be able to lead me to
The fires of No Respite, and throw me in.
But my great enemies, the powerful mental afflictions,
Can in a single instant throw me into fires so powerful
That if the great Mount Meru were to brush against them
Not even dust would remain.

वीद्रायश्राक्ष्यां स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्य

Suppose the mighty pleasure beings, and near pleasure beings, all rose together as one to be my enemy. Still they would never be able to lead me to the fires of the hell called "No Respite," and throw me into the fires, so long as I could prevent myself from falling under the power of the mental afflictions. Just one of my great enemies though, one instance of a powerful mental affliction within my own mind, can in a single instant throw me into the fires of this same hell, into fires which are so powerful that—if the great Mount Meru were to brush against them slightly—it would be totally destroyed, and not even dust would remain. Thus I should make great efforts to smash this enemy, the enemy of everything related to the mental afflictions.

|यद्याः वीः कुँदः र्क्षेट्रसः द्याः वें व्याटः । |द्रुशः सेटः वें वाः स्रव्यः सेदः यः यः स्राः । |द्याः यालदः यादः यादः सेदः यः यः । |प्युदः सेटः ब्रुवः यः सः प्येदः वें ।

This great enemy of mine, the mental afflictions, Can live for a very long time:
For time without beginning or end.
But there is not a one of my other enemies,
None of the worldly ones, who can live so long.

Here is the third point. Consider now another problem with the mental afflictions. This great enemy of mine, the mental afflictions, can live for a very long time: for time without beginning or end. But there is not a one of my other enemies, none of the worldly ones, who can live so long. If I apply the various antidotes for everything related to the mental afflictions only occasionally, nothing will change at all. Thus I must not only make great efforts to destroy the mental afflictions, but I must do so continuously, in a steady stream like a great river of water.

वित्रः विदः कृषाः पश्चर्यः योर्ते नः यो ना वित्रः क्षेद्रः यद्गे स्वरः द्वाः यद्गे वः यद्गे वः यद्गे वः यद्गे वित्रः क्षेद्रः यद्गे वः यद्ग वित्रः विदः कृषाः प्रस्थाः यद्गे वः य

All look to help you and make you happy,
If you make an effort to relate to them
And serve them in a friendly way;
But if you try to relate to the mental afflictions,
They turn on you—hurt you, and bring you pain.

निर्वेदःसरः नुरुदः देशकारुदः रम्याम्बदःसः स्यान्यः विष्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्य विष्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्त्रः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स्यान्यः स् म्यः न्याः म्याः विद्याः स्वाः विद्याः स्वाः विद्याः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्व स्वाः स्व

The other kinds of enemies—that is, the worldly ones—all befriend you, and look to help you and make you happy, if you make an effort to relate to them and serve them in a friendly way, with food and the like. The mental-affliction enemies though are different: if you try to relate to them, or get friendly with them, then they become stronger and stronger; and then they turn on you, and hurt you, bring you pain. The best way to help yourself then is to concentrate on this one task: destroying them completely.

विर्म्भः प्यतः विद्यामः स्वीतः स्वातः व्यापः व्याप

They've been thus my constant enemy for a very long time; And are the one single cause that feeds and nourishes The entire mass of harmful things. How could I ever be free of all the terrors Of cyclic life, and feel gladness so long as They are rooted and fixed in my very heart?

यर्स् स्यर् युर्व।

वर्स् स्यर् युर्व।

There are two parts to the explanation of why it is wrong to tolerate the mental afflictions: considering how they hurt the mind, and considering how they hurt the body. Here is the first. *They*—the mental afflictions—*have been thus my constant enemy for a very long time,* for time with no beginning: they *are the one single* and matchless *cause that feeds and nourishes the entire mass of harmful things,* of suffering and all the rest. *How* could it ever happen then, *so long as these* afflictions *are rooted and fixed in my very heart,* that *I could ever* reach any point where I was *free of all the terrors of cyclic life, and feel* any kind of *gladness?* Happiness would be an impossibility. I must therefore make true efforts in destroying my mental afflictions.

वित्रं निर्वे निर्देश्व निर्देश्व निर्देश्य न

They are guards for the prison of cyclic life, For the hells and all the like; They are butchers that kill you. How could it ever be possible That I could have happiness, So long as they are living In the net of desire that stays in my mind?

याचर्ने चतुः म्यान्त्राचा ताः स्ट्रिं त्यान्त्राचा ताः स्ट्रिं ताः त्यान्त्राच्याः स्वान्त्राच्याः स्वान्यः स्वान्त्रयः स्वान

Here is how the afflictions hurt the body. The mental afflictions prevent you from getting beyond the cycle of life, and so they are guards for the prison of cyclic life—they throw you into the dungeon of the hells and all the like. They are also butchers that kill you, whether you are living in the lower realms, or the higher realms. How could it ever be possible then that I could ever have a moment's happiness, so long as these mental afflictions are living in the net of

desire that stays in my mind—that is, so long as they exist among the misimpressions within my thoughts? The answer is that I never could have a moment's happiness, in my body or my mind.

१२.क्रियः हः श्री२.य२वाः योश्वः २ व्याः वद्गः श्राः श्री २.य२वाः वद्गः यद्गः यद्गः

Even in temporary situations
Where someone does me some minor harm,
I feel anger, pride comes, and until I ruin them
I do not even stop to sleep.
Therefore I must exert myself,
Without letting up in my effort for even a moment,
Until such time as I have directly,
And finally, destroyed this enemy.

Each and every thing which ever happens that I don't want is caused by something related to the mental afflictions. Therefore the right thing for me to do is to exert myself, without letting up in my effort even for a moment, until such time as I have directly, and finally, destroyed this terrible enemy. Even in the everyday world, in temporary situations such as where someone does me some minor harm, does no more than say a few hard words to me, I immediately feel anger, and then some kind of pride comes where I begin to dwell on hard feelings for the person, and then do whatever I can to ruin this enemy, and don't even stop to sleep until I do so. If I act this way with worldly enemies then it is completely appropriate then that I make great efforts to smash the other enemy, the mental afflictions.

यार्ष्रिश्रायात्रीश्रुश क्रेंत्रायात्रेंत्रायात्रेंत्रायात्रेंत्रायते विद्यायते विद्य

Here next is the second general division, on the reasons why we should never be discouraged by the hardships necessary to destroy the afflictions. This division has three parts of its own: putting on armor that allows us to destroy the mental afflictions, and refusing to be discouraged by any hardships that this effort brings us; considering the benefits of making every effort to destroy the afflictions; and a description of why it is therefore completely proper to exert ourselves in actually undertaking to destroy the mental afflictions.

। भी कर मुर्ते त्या के त्या क

There are poor deluded ones who are willing to suffer For those who are going to die by their very nature; They advance to war with fanatical hopes of destroying: Completely ignoring the pain of being hit, Never to turn back, never to withdraw from the field, Until they have achieved their aim.

With the true enemy, an enemy who is an enemy by nature, Who is the cause of all of our sufferings, all the time, There is no need to say that I must be the same. Whatever comes, I must never become discouraged, I must never lessen in my resolve, Even if it brings me hundreds of sufferings.

त्तुः रेचीः शः ब्रैलः चरः रें. च क्र्र्यः तः शुः जर्र्यः चरः रुचीशः तः श्रूं शः हुः रेचूशः श्र्रां चीशः ग्रीटः रेततः विविश्वशः यशः लुनः करे नः येटः श्रीटः जीयोः तयः शुः वर्चीरः चरः क्र्यः श्रीटः न्यः येटः न्यः येटः वर्णः वर्णः

Here is the first. There are those "poor deluded ones," meaning people who are worthy of our pity, who are willing to suffer to kill those who are going to die by their very nature; that is, who will die by themselves anyway, without anyone having to kill them. These people "advance to war," meaning they go to fight in a war, with fanatical hopes of destroying their enemy. They are so intent on this goal that they completely ignore whatever suffering is inflicted upon themselves, the pain of being hit by some weapon like an arrow or spear. They have decided never to turn back, never to withdraw from the field, until they have achieved their aim of destroying their opponent. We on the other hand are faced with enemies that are the cause of all of our sufferings, all the time. They are the true enemy, a pure enemy: an enemy who is an enemy by nature, and who has always been so, from the moment we were born. There is no need to say that I must be the same as those other fighters: I must never become discouraged, never lessen in my resolve, never lose my warrior's heart, no matter what hardships I may have to face in the task of destroying this enemy. I must bear with whatever comes, even if it brings me hundreds of sufferings such as cold, hunger, thirst, or anything of the like. And it is right that I must never let up my efforts until I have been able to subdue the enemy of the mental afflictions.

The second part has three sections of its own: how it is right to bear with hardships for the reason that they are a cause for the culmination of my own goals; how it is right to bear with them for the reason that they are a cause for the culmination of the goals of others; and the reasons why I must bring to a final end the pledge I have made before.

नित्रायः स्वानस्यः स्वानहित्यः धरः । नित्रायः स्वानस्यः स्वानहित्यः धरः । नित्रायः स्वानस्यः स्वानहित्यः । नित्रायः स्वानस्यः स्वानहित्यः । नित्रायः स्वानस्यः स्वानहित्यः । नित्रायः स्वानस्यः स्वानस्यः स्वानस्यः । नित्रायः स्वानस्यः स्वानस्यः स्वानस्यः । नित्रायः स्वानस्यः स्वानस्यः स्वानस्यः ।

Like some ornament for their body
A person treasures even the mark of a wound
Meaninglessly put there by an enemy.
So why should we consider a problem
The pain we feel in our quest
To attain a very great purpose?

Here is the first. Consider how, in the everyday world, a person treasures, like some ornament for their body, even the mark of a wound that was put there by an enemy for some meaningless reason, over some insignificant thing, and then shows it off to other people, saying "This is how I got this one..." We, on the other hand, have undergone some kind of hardship, some kind of pain, for a very great purpose: that is, in our quest to attain total enlightenment. Why should we consider these pains then a problem? We should rather embrace them, for they can only help us.

18'य'मिर्नेय'य'बेर'य'य'सँम्राया

| त्र्यों त्र त्रें त्र र्वं अ लिया श्रे अ श्र या प्यदा | यादा त्र त्र के त्या श्रेयाश यदी यार्वे द या वे द त्या | त्र्यों त्र त्र दे सुर त्या स्था त्र स्था त्या स

Even fishermen, butchers, farmers, and the like Endure willingly all kinds of harms
Such as cold or heat, thinking of nothing
More important than their livelihood.
Why then shouldn't someone like myself
For the sake of the living being's happiness?

र्याः श्रीयः तत्रः स्त्रीयः प्रश्नियः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रीयः स्त्रीयः प्रश्ने स्त्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रात्रः स्त्रः स्त

Here is the second point. Consider now *fishermen*, who make their living by killing fish; *butchers*, the slaughter-house workers who are by tradition considered an inferior caste; *farmers*, those who make their living through tending the earth; *and the like*. Even they endure willingly all kinds of harms, such as cold or heat, thinking of nothing more important than their livelihood. Why then should someone like myself not be able to endure hardships for the sake of bringing about every sort of *happiness* for all *living beings*? I should endure them.

विष्यायान्त्रीत्त्रः श्रीक्षायान्त्रः स्वयान्त्रः स्वयान्तः स्वयान्यः स्वयान्तः स्वयान्तः स्वयानः

You have pledged yourself to free all living beings
In the ten different directions from their mental afflictions.
At the same time you have failed to free you yourself
From your own mental afflictions,
Are you not some kind of madman then,
To say so while you've failed to judge your own level?

यक्ष्यः सम्भावित्।

यक्षयः सम्भावित्।

य

Here is the third point. Someone might make the following statement: "I admit that I am a person who has agreed to undertake the destruction of the mental afflictions within the minds of other persons. It would be wrong though for me to work to destroy the mental afflictions in my own mind, because if I succeeded in doing so I would have fallen into what is called the 'extreme of personal peace." You have though pledged yourself, and developed the wish, to free all living beings, beings as vast in extent as the ten different directions of space itself, from their mental afflictions. If at the same time you have failed to free you yourself from all your own mental afflictions, then you have failed even in the endeavor of accomplishing all your own needs, much less those of others. Are you not some kind of madman then, to say that you are going to free every other living being from their mental afflictions, while at the very same moment you have failed completely to judge your own level—the fact that you yourself are still at the mercy of your own mental afflictions? No one chained in the cycle of suffering of life themselves could ever accomplish all the goals of other living beings, and so you should rather make efforts to destroy the mental afflictions within your own mind.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Eight: How to Fight the Mental Afflictions, Part Two; Why the Perfections are Mental

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chubsems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

क्षेत्रःसत्यःयाक्षेत्र। क्षेत्रःस्यःयवैःयाक्षेत्रःस्यःयत्वःयन्तरः न्यः। नुषःत्र्यःयः यात्रः विदे।

The third section, on why it is right to make great efforts to destroy the mental afflictions, has two parts: making efforts in applying the antidotes to the mental afflictions, and making efforts never to become controlled by the mental afflictions.

१२.५४.११४.११८४.११६४.११८४.१११ १६४.१८५४.१५४.१५४.११ १८२.७.१८५४.१५४.१८४.१ १५४.१.१५९८५४.४ १५४.१.१८४५.१५४.१९८४.१ १६४.१८५४.४

I should therefore never turn back Even for a single moment from the task Of destroying the mental afflictions. I should get attached to them, And learn to hate and make war. These kinds of mental afflictions Act to destroy the mental afflictions And so are not counted among them.

Here is the first of the two. *The mental afflictions* are, *therefore*, things which deserve to be eliminated. As such, *I should never turn back*, either in my thoughts or my actions, *from the task of destroying them, even for a single moment*. *I should get attached to these* antidotes for the mental afflictions; that is, I should make use of the antidotes. *And I should learn to hate* the mental afflictions, *and make war* on them, and smash them.

य. श्रीट. यो छेष. यो लेष. श्रीट. यो श्रीया त्या प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प

Someone may ask the following question: "You seem to be describing some kind of bias in the attitude we should have towards the antidotes that eliminate our mental afflictions, and you have spoken about hating the thing that the antidote is supposed to eliminate. Aren't these types of thoughts themselves just another kind of mental affliction—that is, the very thing which we are trying to eliminate?" *These kinds of* attitudes—of being attached to the antidotes for mental affliction, and of hating the mental afflictions we are trying to eliminate—are themselves only apparent *mental afflictions*. Because they are included into the antidote side—that is, because they are part of what

acts to destroy the mental afflictions—they are not counted among the objects which we seek to eliminate from our minds. There are commentaries which do state that these are themselves something to be destroyed later, but what they mean by saying this is that, once one has finished off all the objects to be eliminated, one need no longer make war.

You can tie me to a stake and burn me, kill me, Or you can cut off my head—that would be fine. But I will never in any shape or form submit To my great enemy, the mental afflictions.

त्र क्षा स्याप्त मृत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र स्याप्त प्रमाप्त प्रम प्रमाप्त प्रम प्रमाप्त प्रमाप्त प्रमाप्त प्रम प्रमाप्त प्रम प्रमाप्त प्रमाप्

Here is the second. Someone may ask another question: "Wouldn't it be easier just to cooperate with the mental afflictions, rather than possibly having to undergo infinite thousands of sufferings during the task of eliminating them?" You can tie me to a stake and burn me, kill me. Or you can cut off my head—that would be fine. The only thing that would happen is that I would lose the body which I possess in this life. But I will never in any shape or form submit to—that is, I will never allow myself to come under the control of—my great enemy, the mental afflictions: those things which create the great sufferings of the hells and such, those things which block me from reaching the goals I hope for.

२८। श्रीक्षेत्र.व्र.ज्ञात्मात्मश्रीट्ट. यमायक्षेत्र. यम्ब्रेत्र. यम्ब्रेत्र. यम्ब्रेत्र. यम्ब्रेत्र. यम्ब्रेत्यः स्वायम्ब्रेत्रः यम्ब्रेत्यः स्वायम्बर्धः यम्ब्रेत्यः स्वायम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्वरः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्धः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्वयः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्यः यम्बर्य

ने'मात्रश्रापते'हेत'मार'त'णर'सेन'छेर'हें(र'रेमाश'पतें।

The third section from before describes how we should take joy in the fact that, if we make efforts, the mental afflictions can be removed. Here there are three parts: describing how, if we are able to eradicate the mental afflictions completely from our minds, they have nowhere else to go; how, because the mental afflictions spring from a cause which is a misperception, they really can be eliminated if we make great efforts; and how, if they are eradicated completely, there could be nowhere else for them to go at all—and should thus be eliminated.

विष्यायात्र्याः क्ष्यान्यः स्थाः देशः स्थाः स्य

If you push a normal enemy out of your country, They can still go on to other lands, Make their home there, and get reinforcements; And then they can return.

The way in which the mental afflictions behave As enemies though is not the same.

प्रतिष्ठिरः र्रा

प्रतिष्ठिरः प्रतिष्ठिरः र्रा

प्रतिष्ठिरः प्रतिष्ठिरः र्रा

प्रतिष्ठिरः र

Here is the first of the three. "Still," one may begin, "it would be better to simply coexist with the mental afflictions, because if they are like normal enemies in the everyday world, they can—if you remove them from the mind one time—go back and regroup, then return to hurt you again." But they are not the same as normal enemies. If you push a normal enemy, a worldly enemy, out of your country one time, they can still go on to other lands, stay there, make their home there, and then regroup—get reinforcements. Then they can return to seek revenge upon you. The way in which the mental afflictions behave as enemies though is not the same. Once you eradicate them completely from your mind, there is nowhere else for them to go, and it is completely impossible for them to regroup and return.

|र्स्क्रिक्तःवन्याः व्यक्क्ष्यः व्यक्षः व

The mental afflictions are such that Once I have eliminated them, Cleared them from my mind By using the eye of wisdom, They have nowhere else to go—No place they can make their home, No way to return and harm me. It all comes down to the fact That my mind is so very weak: I do not have the energy.

यक्ष्यः सञ्चरः स्वरः स्

Here is the second point. The mental afflictions are such that, once I have managed to eradicate them from my mind a single time, they have nowhere to stay. I should therefore make efforts in using the eye of wisdom—the perception of emptiness—to eliminate the seed of the mental afflictions: for everything related to mental affliction springs from a root which is a misperception. Once I have eliminated these seeds, once I have cleared the mental afflictions away from my mind in this way, they have nowhere else at all to go, no place they can make their home, no place to regroup, no way to return to do me harm—it would be a complete impossibility.

Even though this is the case, the mental afflictions do continue to hurt me, and it all comes down to the fact that my mind is so very weak: I do not even have the energy to throw the mental afflictions out even the single time that would be needed.

वित्र सेट्स इस्य दे प्युत्य द से नित्र से द्वार से नित्र से दे प्युत्य दे प्युत्य से स्वर से से प्युत्य से से प वित्र से दे सु प्यूत्य के प्यूत्य प्रयास्य प्रयास प्रयास

It's not true that the mental afflictions
Exist among objects, neither do they exist
Among the group of the powers,
Nor somewhere throughout, nor somewhere other.
There is nowhere at all that they can stay
To do harm to every living being.

They are like an illusion, and so I should eliminate this fear from my heart, And rely on the practice of making great efforts, Working to develop wisdom.
Why should I subject myself pointlessly To the pains of the hells and the rest?

ग्रीट.योचीयोत्रात्राञ्चर.य.ता.श्र्योत्रात्तरु.ष्ट्र.य.श्र्ये-श्रूट्यःश्रुं-यर.वतायदुःह्येर.र्रो

Here is the third point. Someone else might come and assert the following: "We could never be able to eliminate mental afflictions even once, because they grow with the mind itself, and exist as part of the very nature of things." *It's not true that the mental afflictions exist* by nature *among* the *objects* which we perceive: visual objects and the rest. If this were the case, then mental afflictions would start to grow even in enemy destroyers, as they looked upon visual objects and such.

ग्री-देंब-श्रेमश्रायदे-देवट-संदे-र्क्ष्यायाय्यट-दे-स्वर-मावश्रायः स्वेद-हे। मावश्राय्यायः ग्री-देंब-श्रेमश्रायदे-क्षे-स्रोम् प्यंद-ग्रीट-स्वेद-स्वर-सावश्रायः स्वेद-सेव

Neither do the mental afflictions exist in this way *among the group of the* physical *powers*, such as the eye. This is because a person who is directing his or her thoughts towards the meaning of the actual reality of things may still possess the power of the eye, and yet not have any mental affliction.

प्रतिन्द्रियान्त्रीत्तरः व्यवदः याव्यव्यः याद्येत्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः य याद्यः याद्य याद्येदः देः यादः दुः यादः याद्यः याद्य

Nor do the mental afflictions exist somewhere throughout these two possibilities, nor somewhere other than the two: once you have eradicated them from their very root, there is nowhere at all that they can stay: that they can by some kind of nature go and remain, to return then to do harm to every living being.

One might have the following thought: "These mental afflictions are empty of any natural kind of existence, but at the same time they do appear to have natural existence, and so they are like an illusion. As long as this is the case—because they do exist through some nature of their own—I could never eliminate them from their root." It is good though if I can eliminate this fear from my heart, and rely on the practice of making great efforts to remove my mental afflictions, through working to develop the wisdom which perceives emptiness.

Given that I therefore have at the present moment the ability to remove these afflictions, it is not good on the other hand that I *subject myself pointlessly* to the sufferings of the lower realms, *to hells and the rest. Why should I* put myself through these *pains?* Some commentators have also explained the previous lines as referring to the fact that, once we remove the seeds for the mental afflictions, they can no longer stay in these various places.

|ने:क्षेत्र:इस्रान्यस्यस्यःहःस्त्रन्तःयःश्री |स्त्रुत:यःनस्त्रुत:यदे:केन्:नुःद्वन्यःयःशी |नर्द्वस:यदे:न्वाःसःस्त्रुतःयदे:स्त्रःनु। |नर्द्वस:न्वांसःस्त्रुतःयःस्त्राःसःनु।

In this way we must engage in different Kinds of contemplations and make great efforts For the purpose of accomplishing the rules As they have been described. If you—a patient who absolutely had To be treated with specific kinds of medicine—Refused to listen to your physician's advice How could you ever be cured?

त्यः वित्। प्रवित्। प्रवित्।

Here is the third overall section, which is the summary of the chapter. *In this way*—that is, as explained above—we must engage in contemplations of many kinds, and make great efforts in the practice of carefulness, just as the Teacher has taught us to do, for the purpose of accomplishing the ends of both the wish for enlightenment, and the various rules for bodhisattvas, as they have been described earlier. Suppose you were sick, but refused to listen to the advice of your physician. How then could you ever be cured, if you were a patient who absolutely had to be treated with specific kinds of medicine? I would never be cured. Therefore we must exert ourselves in the task of eliminating our mental afflictions, just as that Great Physician, the Teacher, has taught us to do.

|स्टिंस्य प्रस्ति स्त्रीत् स्

Freeing yourself of the dirt
Of the faults in your own mind
And keeping your good deeds increasing,
And never becoming less,
All depends without a doubt
On the practice of carefulness;
As such the wise should ever after
Live their lives with care.

|पर्स.यदु.क्र्याश.श्र.यवर.तत्।

This is just a brief verse, to summarize the chapter.

चल्ने.नज्। विटःक्यःश्रेश्वर्थःश्रेष्ट्रःश्चेत्रःतःयःवहवाःतःयशा चयाःल्ट्राचन्नेत्रःविश्वःवःचःश्चेश्येतुः

This has been the fourth chapter, the presentation on carefulness, from the Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life.

यम्यायात्। स्रमायह्वार्याम्याक्ष्मान्यायाया नमाः स्रमायक्ष्मान्याः स्रमायक्ष्मान्याः स्रमायक्ष्मान्याः स्रमायक्ष्मान्याः स्

Here finally we cover the name of the chapter. *This* then *has been* the explanation of *the fourth chapter, the presentation on carefulness, from* the "Entry Point for the Sons and Daughters of the Victorious Buddhas," a commentary upon the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life.*

जीश्वाता. योश्वेत्राताजारीयो म्ह्रीयाताश्रमशाजास्योतिशातार्या। क्षेताप्रिश्वशाश्रमशाजास्यो

८८। वर्डेर्-यःश्रेश्रश्चात्रान्यात्युश्चायः ५८। वर्ड्स्यः वर्त्युश्चाश्चेश्चश्चायः रवाः व्युश्चायः ५८। वर्स्स्यः श्वेश्चश्चायः रवाः व्युश्चायः ५८। वर्ष्स्यः वर्ष्युश्चायः रवाः व्युश्चायः ५८। वर्ष्स्यः वर्ष्युश्चायः रवाः व्युश्चायः वर्षे

The second section, a demonstration that the fine qualities depend on the mind, has six different parts, consisting of an explanation of how giving, an ethical way of life, not getting angry, joyful effort, meditation, and finally wisdom each depend on the mind.

र्ह्रमःतःमःलोषःतः नद्। योर्ट्रः तदः म्रोमः स्वीषः स्वामः त्यों तः म्राम्यः स्वीषः तरः वर्ष्यः त्याः वर्षे । व

We will present the first of these in two steps of its own: a demonstration of the fact that the culmination of the perfection of giving does not depend on removing the poverty of each and every living being; and an explanation of how one can reach the final end of a generous state of mind through continual practice.

> भिक्कें न्या स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्र स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्रिस्ट स्ट्र स्

Suppose something were the perfection Of giving when it removed The poverty of every living being. If there were living beings though Who suffered still from hunger, How then could the Protectors of The past have reached the perfection?

Here is the first. Suppose someone were to assert the following: "We can posit something as the perfection of giving when the culmination of this perfection of giving results in removing the poverty of each and every living being." If though there were living beings who still suffered from hunger, and there are, how then could the Protectors of the past, the Buddhas, ever have reached the culmination of the perfection of giving? It would be illogical.

It was spoken that the perfection Of giving is the thought To give all that one has, Along with the results, To every living being. This then is the reason why It's the state of mind alone.

श्रिश्यायाः त्री देश्यत् युश्यायं देश । विश्वाद्वा प्राप्त विश्वाद्वा । विश्वाद्वा

Here is the second point, which is a kind of summary: "Therefore it was spoken that the culmination of the perfection of giving occurs when one has perfectly accustomed oneself to the kind of thought where one wishes to give all that one

has—one's body, one's possessions, and the total sum of one's good deeds, along with the power of the virtue that results from giving these things away—to every living being. This then is the reason why, it is because of this, that giving is only something that depends upon the state of mind."

The second part, on the ethical way of life, has two sections of its own: a demonstration that it would be incorrect to say that the culmination of the perfection of an ethical life depends on the final end of any living being who is being killed; and that the culmination of the perfection comes from constant practice of the attitude of wanting to give up harm to others.

। दे. र्या. चार्जुर. स्रा. य्युर. यर. यञ्जूर।

How could you ever chase fish and such To a place where no one could kill them?

रया.श्रम्बर.रया.श्रम.योट.याजूर.वेंग.तर.शु. द्वीर.तर.श्र.याच्येंर.टे.भूर.श्र.वेंश.तयु.वेंग.तर.वेंश. त.ता.कूंश.रय्युश.त.श.लुप.तर.वता इ.रेयांश.रट.थ.ता.ज्यांश.ता.तीता.योट.खेया.धे.ट्र. रिट.त्.व्री व्यताव्रिशम.यो.तर.व्रीर.ह्यांश.त.ज्यांया.योवर.येव्र.श्रम.श्र.व्यांत्र.व्यां

Here is the first point. It must be incorrect to say that the culmination of the perfection of an ethical life should depend on trying to reach the end of the last living being who is being killed. Because *how could you ever chase* every wild beast, and every *fish*, *and* every other *such* being *to* some *place where no one could kill* any of *them*? You never could.

विष्यान्त्रिस्यायः स्यान्त्रियः यसः ययदा

It is explained that the perfection Of an ethical way of life consists of Attaining a way of thinking wherein One wishes to abandon. र्सूर्यश्चर्यात्र्रं विश्वर्यत्रित्राञ्ज् यार्स्याश्चर्यात्राञ्चर्यात्र्यात्र्यात्राञ्चर्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्र्यात्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्

Here is the second. Therefore, for this reason, it is explained in sutra that the culmination of the perfection of an ethical way of life consists of attaining the culmination of the constant practice of a way of thinking wherein one wishes to abandon any idea of harming someone else, or of stealing anything. The sutra at this point says, "What is the perfection of an ethical way of life? It is the way of thinking in which one abandons anything that is harmful to others."

नियाने व्यवस्थान क्षेत्र स्थान स्था

It would be a complete impossibility Ever to destroy altogether those Irritating people, vast as space. But the destruction of a single object, The thought of anger, is comparable To destroying each and every enemy.

र्या. जीका क्यां क्षेत्रका क्षेत्रका व्याप्त क्षेत्रका क्षेत्रका

The third part, on the perfection of patience, has three sections: the point, a metaphor, and the connection between the point and the metaphor. Here is the first. You have reached the culmination of patience with the destruction of a single object—the thought of anger, which is comparable to destroying each and every one of your external enemies. You would have to admit that the culmination of this perfection is not something that depends on finishing off every possible object which could make you angry though, because it would be a complete, or entire, impossibility ever to accomplish the destruction of every single irritating person, for these are as limitless in extent as space itself. Therefore patience is also something that depends upon the mind.

|अःश्रेट्राव्यय्यः व्याः म्याः व्याय्यायः शु। |द्रुयः यद्ये व्याः व्याः

How could you ever find enough leather To cover the entire surface of Earth? Covering simply the soles of your feet Is comparable to the entire surface.

शः श्रेट श्रम्भ उत् ना र्धिनाम प्रत्य त्या में प्रत्य ना र्थिन स्थित स्था निष्ठेश प्राप्त निष्ठेश निष

Here is the second point. Suppose you decided to cover the entire surface of Earth with leather, in order to prevent the thorns and so on there from hurting your feet. How could you ever find enough leather to do so? Even in this case you would simply wrap your own feet in enough leather to cover the area of the soles of your feet, in order to keep the thorns and such from hurting you. This would be comparable then to covering the entire surface of the Earth with leather.

|रे'वलेक'सुं'र्स्य'र्स्स'सं'यर'। |वर्वा'वीस'सुर'वर्ज्ज्वा'से'यर'वी |पालक् स्थाय स

Just the same it would be an impossibility For me to stop every single outer object; Rather I should stop this tendency of my own mind. Why should I stop all the others?

Here is the third part. My present case is *the same* as this metaphor. *It would* be an impossibility for me to stop every single outer object that might bring me any kind of pain. Rather I should stop this tendency of my own mind to focus on these same objects and then feel anger. It is through the constant practice of this action that I could eventually bring patience to its culmination. Why though should I try to stop all the other objects, everything that could ever make me angry? I never could, and there is no need even to try.

A single instance of clear mind Can as a result lead you To the Pure One or the like. Along these same lines the related actions Of body and speech are unable to give A result if one's efforts are feeble. श्रिश्वाश्वी वर्श्वर्यायोश्वर्यायाः श्रिश्वर्यायाः स्वित्रायाः स्वित्रायः स्वित्रायः स्वत्रायः स्वत्रायः स्वत्रायः स्वत्रायाः स्वत्रायः स्वत्रयः स्वत्रयः स्वत्रयः स्वत्रयः स्वत्रयः स्वत्रयः स्वत्यः स्व

Here is the fourth point. Joyful effort as well is something that depends upon the mind, something that depends on your constant practice of it to bring it to its final conclusion. Consider the fact that a single small instance of clear and focused concentration, in which with a joyful state of mind you are practicing meditation upon something like the first concentration level, can as a result lead you even so far as a birth in the place of the Pure One (Brahma), or the like. Along these same lines, an instance of the mind, and the related actions of body and speech, which are not related to a powerful state of mind are unable to lead to a desired result, such as the development of the the state of mind of the first concentration level, if one's efforts are feeble—meaning where one has little joy in the task. Therefore it all depends on a powerful state of mind.

नित्त्र्यायह्र्यः प्रम्थः द्वाराण्याः विक्रायात्व्यः याय्ये स्थायः याद्यः याद्यः विक्रायात्व्यः याय्ये स्थायः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः विक्रायः याद्यः स्थायः स्थायः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः विक्रायः विष्

Suppose you attempt every kind of practice Where you repeat, or do other asceticisms, Over a long period of time.

If you allow your mind to be distracted To other objects, then understanding The true nature is meaningless.

।स्यान्त्री यम्रमानान्त्रम् श्रीत्रास्य स्वीतः स्वामान्य स्वीदः स्वीदः स्वीदः स्वीदः स्वामान्यः स्वीदः स्वामान

यः भ्रात्यीयः सम्भार्त्यः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्तः स्वार्त्यः स्वरः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्तः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्तः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्त्यः स्वार्त्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वरः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्तः स्वर्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्त्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्य

Here is the fifth point. The culmination of the perfection of meditation as well is something that depends on the mind—a mind which is free of dullness and agitation, and which is lucid; a mind which is under the constant influence of thoughts of sadness over this life. Suppose now that you attempt every kind of practice where you repeat a great number of secret mantras, or asceticisms, such as fasting or the like, over a long period of time. If you allow your mind to be distracted to other objects as you do these practices, then you will be unable to understand the true nature of things.

As the Buddha himself has stated in scripture, "Oh monks! The practices of asceticism or of recitation, or any of the like, are fruitless when the mind is distracted to the objects of desire." What Lord Buddha is saying is that practices done this way are *meaningless*, in the sense that they can never lead to the desired result.

|यादःयोशःक्रंशःग्रीःयार्डःवःशक्य |शेश्रशःग्रीःयाश्वदःवदेःशःविशःव। |यदेःर्ववःश्वयाःयश्वरःयार्वशःवर्देदःग्रादः। |देःद्वाःद्वरःश्वरःश्रीःवदःवद्वश

Suppose any particular person fails
To understand this secret of the mind;
The highest import, the principal teaching.
They may hope to reach bliss and smash all suffering,
But will wander nonetheless, just as they
Always have, without reaching their goal.

विशासन् श्री विशासन् विशासन्य विशासन् विशासन्

Here is the sixth point. Wisdom is also something that depends upon the mind. Suppose any particular person fails to understand this secret of the mind, ultimate reality, because they are no proper vessel for being taught the highest import of all, the principal instruction of this teaching. It may be the case that they hope to reach matchless bliss, and to smash all the sufferings of the cycle of life. They will nonetheless be left without reaching the goal they wish for; they will be left wandering here and there, wherever, just as they always have been. Therefore the perfection of wisdom depends on the mind.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Nine: Awareness

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chubsems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

|माश्रमःतायाष्ट्रम। इत्याश्रीःर्ख्यान्य। देःयमावेमान्वेतःश्रीःर्ख्यार्थे।

The third section covers how to develop awareness through recollection. There are two steps to this explanation: how to develop recollection, and then how awareness is developed from this.

12.01.00 - 2.00 - 12.01.00 - 12.0

Because of this, recalling to mind The Buddhas will also come To him or her again and again.

याश्वराद्वर्गः प्रश्ने स्वराद्वर्गः स्वर्गः स्वरं स्वर्गः स्वरं स्वरं

Here is the first. If any particular person performs the contemplation described above then, because of this, recalling to mind the high qualities of the Buddhas, along with those of the Dharma and the Sangha, will also come to him or her again and again. They will thus be able to develop with ease the practice of recalling the Three Jewels.

।य्यूटःचःत्रमःग्यूटःव्यूटःव्यूटः। ।देःक्रःविशःचलेदःव्यूटःव्यूट्यःव्यूटः। ।व्यूटःचवःद्व्यःव्यूटःव्यूटःव्यूटः। ।व्यूटःचवःद्व्यःव्यूटःव्यूटःव्यूटः।

Suppose a person reaches a point
Where they're able to keep their recollection
Very solid; where they are able
To use their mind to protect.
At this point it will lead to awareness,
And even should these two
Disappear, they nonetheless return.

चेश्राचित्रक्षेत्रक्ष्याः स्वाप्त्रक्ष्याः स्वाप्त्रक्ष्यः स्वाप्त्रक्ष्यः स्वाप्त्रक्ष्यः स्वाप्त्रक्ष्यः स्व त्रित्रक्षेत्रक्षः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्

Here is the second point. Suppose a person reaches a point where he or she is able to keep their recollection very solid—is able to use their mind to protect themselves against mental afflictions. At this point then the recollection will lead this person to gain a kind of awareness, where they are able to watch themselves and grasp properly the distinction between occasions when their actions are proper, and when they are improper. It is also the case that, even should these two attitudes slip and disappear at some point, they nonetheless return. Therefore the question of whether one becomes a master of Buddhist practice or not hinges upon how well one can maintain their recollection and awareness; and thus one should seek to become a master of these two attitudes.

२४.र्ट्य.चुट्योः व्याद्येश्वरात्यः श्रीयः व्याय्यां । दटः त्यायात्रेश। श्रीयाश्वराचीः ग्रीयः श्रीयः व्याद्यः स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स्थाय

ततुःगीयःश्च्रीरःजानस्याःत्। क्ष्मश्चान्त्। श्च्रीरःजानस्याःयाः विश्वान्तः विश्वानः विश

Here next is the third point from before, which covers how one should train oneself in the act of using recollection and awareness to guard one's mind. We proceed in three separate sections: how to train oneself in the ethics of restraint, in the ethics of collecting goodness, and in the ethics of working for the benefit of all living beings.

The first section has two parts of its own, which are striving for purity in the actions of all three doors of expression, and protecting oneself from slipping. The first of these three has three divisions: how to watch one's physical and verbal behavior; how to watch one's mind; and then an explanation of situations which are allowed, and those which are not. Watching one's physical and verbal behavior will be presented in terms of examining one's motivation prior to any physical action; advice concerning how to look around, and other subjects; applying this advice to other activities; and then finally watching how one is staying.

|३८८। श्रुपःयरः वे यावरूः यरः श्रुपः ।देः कें यद्याः योशः वेदः यत्ने वः दु। ।देः कें यद्याः योशः वेदः यत्ने वः दु। ।इस्थः श्रुपःयरः वेशः यवशः यरः हु।

At the particular moment You should decide: This state of mind has something Wrong with it. At this point freeze

Exactly as you are—
Stay like a bump on a log.

त्रमित्रेत्र प्रस्ति । वर्षे प्रस्ति । वर्

Here is the first. Whenever one is about to go somewhere, or do anything of the kind, one should at the particular moment—that is, before anything else—examine one's motivation: one should decide, "This state of mind has something wrong with it," or "This state of mind has nothing wrong with it." If at this point you find that your motivation does have something wrong with it, then you should apply the appropriate antidote, which is to freeze exactly as you are, like a bump on a log, and refuse to be moved by something which is not good.

क्षेत्र.ची.चत्। ची.च.र्टा चीटा चवा चिषये चिटा देट्ट कारा जाही खेत्र ची.च.र्टा ट्या चक्ष्या पदे छेटी। चिष्ठेया पाटा चवा चिषये चित्रा चित्र चित्र

The advice relating to how one should look around comes in four separate steps: a general presentation on how you should undertake the activity of using your eyes to look around; instructions on what to do if you become tired; what to do if someone approaches you; and what to do when you have finished refreshing yourself.

|र्देब:श्वेद:वाधेद:वर:श्वःवःहै। |देश:धर:शेशशःधशःह्वःहे। |देश:धर:शेशशःधशःहवःहे। |श्वेवःहे:ववःहे:वर्द्वःवर:हे।

I should never look around Meaninglessly or with distraction, But rather be sure to fix my mind, And always keep my eyes lowered.

१८८. मृत्या ह्या १८८ म्या स्थाया स्याया स्थाया स्याया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्था

स्यायक्षेत्रः केन्द्रः त्री । देशायवायः सुवाकाः सुः प्रताः से प्रता

Here is the first. *I should never*, at any time, *look around* from side to side *meaninglessly*, with my mind *distracted*. This is because of the fact that, should I do so, my mind will get worse. Rather *I should be sure to fix my mind* on a virtuous object: whenever I look around, I should *always keep my eyes lowered*, looking ahead no farther than the length of a plowshare, [which is explained in scripture as one armspan].

चन्ध्रःचःदयायञ्जूष्यःक्षःचन्द्रःच्रा देशःवयायःस्त्रीयाशःश्रःचन्ध्रःचरःच्रा

To refresh myself From looking this way, I should look around For the time being.

|याक्षेत्रायाक्षे | |प्रमायाक्षायाक्षायाद्वायात्वायाक्षायात्वायाक्षायात्वायाक्षायाः । ।याक्षेत्रायाक्षायाः विवाय

Here is the second point. If the time should come to invigorate myself—that is, if I find that I have become tired *looking this way*—then *to refresh myself I should for the time being* raise my eyes, and *look around*.

It may happen that someone Comes into my line of vision; I should look at them and say, "It is good to see you." I should look around me

On all sides again and again, To check if there are dangers Or the like on the way.

र् सूर्याका चर्नु र चर्ने चर चित्रं। त्राम् प्रतिका चर्नु र प्रमास्त्रं के त्राम् अप्तिका क्षाप्त क्ष

Here is the third point. When I have started to look around this way, it may happen that someone comes into my line of vision, and approaches me. At this point I should look at them and give them a smile, and say, "It is good to see you." Moreover, as I move down the road it may be necessary to check whether or not there are any dangers or the like on the way, and in such a case I should look around me on all sides, again and again.

विर्म्द्रस्याप्यस्य विर्म्पत्रस्य विर्म्पत्रस्य विर्म्पत्रस्य विर्म्पत्रस्य विर्म्पत्रस्य विर्म्पत्रस्य विर्म् विष्य श्री स्वित्रस्य विर्म्भ विरम्भ विरम विरम्भ विरम विरम्भ विरम विरम विरम्भ विरम विरम्भ विरम विरम्भ विरम विरम विरम्भ विरम विरम विरम विरम विरम वि

When I've finished refreshing myself I should then turn around, And look at the things behind me; I should check In front and in back of me, And then either go, or come.

विश्वत्रश्चा स्थान्य स्थान्य

Here is the fourth point. When I have finished refreshing myself and it is time to go on, then I should turn around and look at the things behind me. I should check in front of me and in back of me—to see if there is anything there like a cliff—and then either go, or come, as may be fitting.

I should act the same way In every circumstance, Acting only after determining Whether there is any meaning.

यास्तर,तयु, देश्र्य,तीयार्य,वीयाय्य,यह्या,तयु,योय्य,श्रेय्य,श्रेय्य,श्रेय्य,श्रेय्य,श्रेय्य,श्रेय्य,श्रेय्य,श्

Next is the third section from above, on applying this advice to other activities. *I should act the same way in every circumstance* in which I am about to engage in any physical or verbal action. That is, I should *act only after determining whether there is any meaning*, any benefit, to myself and others.

|योषकाराःलुषःखेषायक्षःयरःची |श्रेयकाश्वःलेषायद्गःहःक्षःवर। |वी.यःयर्जूयोषावकादेःहःक्षःवर। |जिषाग्रीषायदेःक्षरःयोषकाचिःबिषा

I should prepare myself and say,
"This is how my body is engaged now."
And then I should look at myself and say,
"For this particular length of time
Just how will my body be engaged?"

तालुक्ष्यक्षाचक्षेत्रम्य विद्वेद्वेद्वा स्त्रे स्त

Here is the fourth part, about how to stay in different states. Whenever I am engaged in anything at all, I should consider myself, prepare myself, and say, "This is how my body is engaged right now." And then I should look at myself and say, "Now I am going to undertake some activity for a particular length of time; just how will my body be engaged, in what kind of activity?" After this, go and try your best to undertake some activity which is free of any kind of wrong.

My mind is a wild elephant:
I must tie it properly to the strong stake
Of a spiritual object of focus.
I must try with my every effort
To watch that it stays this way,
Without ever getting loose.

स्र-प्रमिश्नात्मात्रीत्र्याः श्रेष्याः स्रिम्प्राचिः प्रमान्याः स्रिम्प्राचिः प्रमान्याः स्रिम्प्राचिः स्रिम्प्राचः स्र

Next comes the second point, on how to watch one's mind. Here again there are two divisions: tying the mind to some virtuous object, and checking whether or not you are keeping your mind one-pointedly fixed upon a virtue or not.

Here is the first. My mind is an elephant that has yet to be trained, and is still wild. I must tie it properly to a strong stake; that is, to the spiritual object where I have promised to keep the focus of my mind, one-pointedly. I must try now with my every effort to watch that it stays this way, without ever getting loose.

। ठे. दश्यः हेट त्यहें दायहें दायहें। । इस्तर हेया या हेया ग्राट के त्य के राध्य रा । यद्या यो स्थेत त्य दे या रा ह्यें दा हेश। । ते त्यू रा स्थेत त्या के स्थेर यह या

No matter what I will make efforts In single-pointed concentration That never for even a second slips. I will examine my thoughts Constantly in a certain way, saying "What is my mind engaged in?"

Here is the second division. Now *no matter what I will make efforts* to achieve a kind of *single-pointed concentration* which is focussed on a virtuous object, and which is never distracted elsewhere. I will see that my concentration *never slips* away, *for even a* single *second*, to any other object. And *I will examine my thoughts constantly in a certain way*, which is by saying to myself, "What is my mind engaged in right now; is it something which is proper, or something which is improper?"

विद्यास्त्र न्यायः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः विद्यास्त्र न्याः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स

Suppose that in danger or celebration, Or anything related, I find myself unable; I should do then the convenient. It's stated that, at any specific moment In the act of giving this way, You should leave the ethical way of life.

| याशुअ:यः दे। रः यो: श्रॅवा:यः यार्दे ५:यदे: यहे वाश्वःयः ५८:५ में दः श्रॅवाशः ५८: यहे यः विश्वः विश्वः विश्व | याशुअ:यदे: ५ यादः श्रेंदः ५८: । दे: यशः केशः ख्रुवा:यदेः श्रेंशशः ५दः योः ५दः श्रॅवाशः ५८: यहे यः यश्रीश्राक्षेत्राक्षेत्राच्याः विद्वान्त्राच्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्राच्याः विद्वान्त्राच्याः विद्वान्त्राच्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्यः विद्वान्याः विद्वान्यः विद्वान्यः विद्वान्त्याः विद्वान्याः विद्वान्यः विद्वान्त्

Next is the third point, an explanation of situations which are allowed, and those which are not. Suppose there is a situation where there is some *danger* that threatens my life, *or* I am engaged in some *celebration* such as an offering to the Jewels, *or* else I have to do *anything related* to something which is of even greater benefit to living beings, or anything of the like. *And suppose* that during one of these occasions *I find myself unable* to maintain very fine scrutiny of the actions of my body and my mind.

In such a case we are allowed to continue as we may find most convenient. The Sutra Requested by Unending Understanding states, "At any specific moment, when you are performing the act of giving in this way, then you should withdraw somewhat from the practice of the ethical way of life, and leave it for the moment." This quotation is saying that, if you are unable at the same moment to maintain both of these two practices, then assuming it is the time for giving—that is, assuming you are concentrating primarily on learning the practice of giving at this point—then you should leave off the practice of an ethical way of life, as far as those fine points which you are unable to maintain at the moment. The point of this verse is that we must become masters in understanding the proper order of the path, and then complete each step of the path in its proper order.

|य्यादः वियाः यसस्य सः हेः युरः यसस्य सः या ।देः यसः याव्य दः दुः सेः यससः स्रो ।देरः याह्य दः योः यससः यः यो सा ।देरः वेदः देवाः यसुवः यरः यु । तेस्य त्रे त्येया से त्युरा । तेस्य त्रे त्येत्र यो त्ये त्युर हे । तेस्य त्रे त्येत्र यो त्ये त्ये त्ये । तेस्य त्रे त्येत्य यो स्याप्ति स्था । तेस्य त्येत्र यो स्थाप्ति स्थापति स्यापति स्थापति स्थापति स्थापति स्थापति स्थापति स्थापति स्थापति स्य

With any action first consider, And then undertake it, Without thinking of any other. If you focus your mind on this, Then for the time being undertake To practice it alone.

If you keep this way then everything Will come out perfectly;
Otherwise you will fail in both.
If you follow this too then
The secondary afflictions of failing
In watchfulness will never grow.

One may raise the following objection: "The practice of an ethical way of life is superior to the practice of giving; how is it then that we are supposed to leave off the former practice for the latter?" With any series of actions that you must practice in a definite order, you must be careful to consider carefully

which should come first. Then you should *undertake this* first *action and not think of some other one*.

If you are starting with the practice of giving, if you are focussing your mind on this, then you should for the time being undertake to practice it only. If you train yourself this way where there is a path that must be followed in a certain fixed order, then everything will come out perfectly; whereas if you do otherwise, and reverse the order somehow, you will fail in bringing both the earlier and the later steps to their proper conclusion.

There are *secondary* types of *mental affliction* which are a kind of failure to understand the stages of the path, *a failure of watchfulness*, and *if you follow* this understanding of the stages then *they will never grow* strong within you. As such you must become a master in understanding the proper order of the stages of the path.

प्रमान्त्री

प्रमान्ति

प्रमान्ति

प्रमान्त्री

प्रमान्ति

प्रमानि

प्रमान्ति

प्रमान्ति

प्रमान्ति

प्रमान्ति

प्रमान्ति

प्रमानि

प्

Here is the second major section, on how to prevent oneself from slipping. This section itself has two parts: preventing yourself from slipping in the rules for the body, and preventing yourself from slipping in the rules for the mind. The first of these has three divisions, which are keeping yourself from falling under the control of distraction; giving up activities which are meaningless; and checking your motivation whenever you engage in any action.

| ने:श्रेवे:वाह्यायःश्वरःव्यक्ष्यायः | में:श्रेक्यःव्यक्ष्यःयःश्वरः | में:श्रेक्यःव्यक्ष्यःयःश्वरःयः | में:श्रेक्यःव्यक्षःयःश्वरःयः | में:श्रेक्यःव्यक्षःयःश्वरःवयः

Even if I must engage In all sorts of useless conversation, Or all those many kinds Of interesting spectacles, Still I should abandon Any desire for them at all.

Here is the first. I should keep myself from engaging in *all sorts of useless conversation* such as talk about the leaders of countries, and criminals or the like; I should as well avoid *all those many kinds of interesting spectacles* such as performances of music or dance. *Even if* there is some pressing need to *engage* in these things, or if I do so out of consideration for others' wishes, *I should still abandon any desire at all for these* things.

वित्रसेत्रस्येत्रस्येत्त्र्यः वित्रस्याः वित्रस्य वित्रस्याः वित्

One should recall the rules Of Those Who Have Gone to Bliss, And out of terror desist immediately From any activity such as digging the earth,

Cutting living plants, or drawing in the soil Without any particular need.

Here is the second division. Even though one may not be a fully ordained monk, one should still recall the rules established by Those Who Have Gone to Bliss, and out of terror for the problems that would come to oneself desist immediately from any activity such as digging the earth, cutting living plants, or drawing in the soil without any particular need to do so.

|यहर्यस्य स्थान्य स्यान्य स्थान्य स्यान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्य

Whenever I feel a wish to move Or any wish at all to express myself, I will first check my own mind; I resolve firmly to act In accord with what is right.

The third division has three parts of its own: the teaching, its explanation, and a summary. Whenever I feel a wish to move my body, or any wish at all to express myself in speech, I will first check my own mind. I will not allow myself to fall under the power of anything wrong, and I resolve firmly to act in accord with what is right: with what I know should be done, and should not be done.

 \mathbb{E} . ખેત્ર. ચે. વ. તેર. ક્રેય. જ્યારા શ્રું વાલા ક્રેય. પ્રાપ્ત ક્રેય. પ્રાપત ક્રેય. પ્રાપ્ત ક્રેય. પ્રાપત ક્

The explanation comes in five sections: what to do when you feel as though you want to have a mental affliction; what to do when agitation or similar thoughts come; what to do when you feel desire for material gain or fame, or anything of the like; what to do when you should be thinking of the benefit of others; and what to do when you feel as though you want to have a feeling like anger, depression, or such.

विदः चित्रे दुः के वाक्षः यः दुः। विदः चित्रे दुः के वाक्षः यः दुः। विदः चित्रे दुः के वाक्षः यः दुः। विदः चित्रे दुः के वाक्षः यदः चु।

Whenever I feel as though I want To have attachment, or else anger, I should keep from going into action, I should keep from speaking out, I should stay as a bump on a log.

बुद्। श्रुभुः । यारामेशःश्रुप्तरःम्पुत्रःम्यानुद्रःम्युद्रम्ययुद्रःम्युद्रःम्युद्रम्ययुद्रःम्युद्रम्ययुद्रःम्युद्रम्युद्रम्ययुद्रम्

Whenever I feel as though I want to have attachment, or else anger, I should keep my body from going into action, and I should keep my speech from speaking out. I should stay as I am, working on the antidote, and stay as still as a bump on a log.

 चेत्रात्तन्नाच्चः कूत्राचार्ट्टाचाल्यः चैत्राचालयः चर्षीः चट्टाच्याच्याः चात्राच्चः क्ष्याः चालयः चेत्राच्याः चालयः चेत्राच्याः चालयः चेत्राच्याः चालयः चेत्राच्याः चाल्यः चेत्राच्याः चालयः चित्राच्याः चालयः चालयः चालयः चित्राच्याः चालयः चालयः चित्राच्याः चालयः चा

Here is the second section. Suppose I begin to feel agitation, where my mind floats from one object to another, or else an urge to humilate someone, by laughing at them derisively. Or say that I start to feel pride, where I am puffed up by thinking of my own qualities, or else conceit, which comes from thinking of my own youthful vitality or the like. Suppose as well that it occurs to me that I should expose another person's faults publicly, or that I should pull the wool over another's eyes; that is, deceive another person by some devious action motivated by my own lack of contentment, my desire for some kind of profit for myself.

|त्र-क्रें-विद्यत्वेद-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य-विद्य |व्यक्षि-वरुष-विद्यक्ष-विद्य-वि

Or suppose a time comes
That I feel the urge
To sing my own praises,
Disparage others, or else contend.

In every such situation I should stay like a bump on a log.

याद्या अंतर्भात्र स्वाद्य स्य स्वाद्य स्वाद्य स्वाद्य स्वाद्य स्वाद्य स्वाद्य स्वाद्य स्वाद्य

Or suppose a time comes that I feel the urge to sing my own praises, describing to everyone my good qualities; or else to disparage others by criticizing them, or to scold them with words of contempt. Suppose finally that I feel the need to engage in some argument with someone else, to contend with them. In every such situation I should stand completely still, and not move the slightest, and stay like a bump on a log.

|हे.क्.चेट.चब्रेब.चाब्याय.उर्देट.तव्या |व्यत्या.श्रेम्या.द्व्य.ट्रंब.ट्रंचाक्षेत्र.उर्देट.तव्या |व्यत्या.श्रम्था.द्व्य.ट्रंब.ट्रंचाक्षेत्र.उर्देट.तव्या |हे.क्रंचिट.चब्रेब.चाब्य.त्व्यं.ट्रंट्यच्या

Suppose as well that I feel A desire for gain, or else for honor; For a great circle of servants, Or else the service of others. On these occasions too I should stay Still as a bump on a log.

योश्वर्यात्रः चीत्। श्योशः राज्ञात्व्याः वित्रः योज्ञात्व्यः देवः देवः वित्रः योज्ञात्वः वित्रः योज्ञात्वः वित्रः योज्ञात्वः वित्रः योज्ञात्वः वित्रः वित्रः योज्ञात्वः वित्रः योज्ञात्वः वित्रः वित्रः योज्ञात्वः वित्रः वित्रः योज्ञात्वः वित्रः वित

Here is the third section. Suppose as well that I feel a desire for gain—in the form of money for teaching or the like; or else honor, such as when others prepare a seat upon which I shall teach; or reputation. Or perhaps I may begin to hope for a great circle of servants, or else desire the service of others, who come to honor me by massaging my body. On these occasions too I should stay still as a bump on a log, stay concentrating on the antidotes that work against these attitudes.

|मूब्र-र्नेद्यायाः यरः वर्तेरः यः दरः। |रूटः र्नेद्याकेरः यरः वर्नेदः यः दटः। |सूः यरः वर्नेदः यवेः सेससः गुटः द।

1रेशके विरामलेक मान्यापर नु।

Suppose I ignore the needs of others, Or strive only for my own needs, Or else get the urge to simply talk; When I am like this, I should stay As still as a bump on a log.

द्रमारः बनाः देशः देः विदः चल्लेदः दुः नादशः धः चाल्वदः द्र्दः ध्यायः वर्षेदः ध्यायः वर्षेदः ध्यायः वर्षेदः धः चाल्वदः द्रोदः धः चाल्वदः चाल्व

Here is the fourth section. *Suppose* that, while I am supposed to be intent on reaching the goals of both myself and others, I ignore the needs of others, or else begin to strive only for my own needs, or else get the urge to simply talk. Whenever I am acting like this kind of person, I should stay as still as a bump on a log.

|शेरवर्डेन् त्येर्त्यं वहेवाश्वर्यन्तः।
|नेरवित्रःश्चेर्ह्याश्चर्यं श्चेर्याश्चर्यं स्ट्राः।
|न्रत्योः श्चें वाश्वर्यं श्चेश्चर्यं श्चें स्ट्राः।
|न्रत्योः श्चें वाश्वर्यं श्चें श

Suppose I can no longer endure,
Or feel laziness, and fear.
Just so I might want to act
In some uncontrolled way,
Or engage in some irrelevant chatter,
Or get the thought to feel
Some bias for my own kind.
At such times too I should stay
As still as a bump on a log.

त्रकास्त्रकः चतुःश्चीः वाष्ट्रकः न्याः अवाश्वाश्वाशः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स त्र स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः स्वाधः सः न्याः स्वाधः सः स्वाधः स्वाधः सः स्वाधः स्व

यात्रसःयः चुर्ता

Here is the fifth section. *Suppose* I reach a point where I feel *I can no longer endure* another's anger, or some suffering, or anything of the like. Or suppose I fall under the power of *laziness*, meaning a lack of joy for performing virtuous deeds, and so develop a *fear* for accomplishing good deeds or such.

Just so I might want to act in some insistent, uncontrolled way, lacking any self-restraint at all, or else feel the urge to engage in some irrelevant chatter. Or else I may get the thought to feel some bias for my own kind, my own relatives or the like. At such times too I should stop myself, and stay as still as a bump on a log, and maintain the antidotes for all these actions.

१२.५४.२१४.४४.४५४.१५८.१ १२४.४८.४५.४५४.४८.८८.८८.४५.४४। १२.४.२५८.५४.४५४.४५४.१ १२.४.४४४.४५४.४५४.४५

I should in this way check myself
For thoughts filled with mental afflictions,
Or those thoughts where I want
To make some kind of meaningless efforts.
Whenever they do come,
I should act like a warrior,
Using the antidotes
To keep my mind firm and steady.

विश्वास्त्रस्यक्षात्वे ने स्रम्यावस्त्रस्य स्त्रस्य स्त्

Here finally is the third part from above: the summary. I should then in this way check myself for thoughts which are filled with mental afflictions, or else for those thoughts where I want to make some kind of meaningless efforts. Whenever they do come, I should act like some great and powerful warrior: I should use the proper antidote attitudes, and keep my mind firm and steady, preventing it from engaging in any negative action.

The Asian Classics Institute Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Reading Ten: The Perfections of Giving and Ethical Living

The following reading is taken from the *Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas (rGyal-sras 'jug-ngogs)*, a commentary by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432) on the book called *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life (Byang-chubsems-dpa'i spyod-pa la 'jug-pa*) by Master Shantideva (c. 700 AD).

यम्याश्वास्त्रात्त्रात्त्र्यं श्चेत्रात्त्रात्त्रेत्रात्त्रात्त्रेत्रात्त्रात्त्र्यं स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्

Here is the third part, [which is advice that you should involve yourself only with virtuous activities]. This part has three sections of its own: advice to perform the act of giving towards exceptional objects; advice to perform virtuous activities on one's own accord; and advice to develop the perfection of giving ever higher, and to act after once one has examined the purpose of acting.

Motivated by strong enthusiasm, Only by the antidote, or performed Towards objects of high spiritual qualities, Those who've been of great benefit, Or those who are suffering.

Here is the first. Since the power of the virtue is so much more powerful, I should exert myself in the following kinds of virtuous activity:

- * Giving which is done "all the time," meaning on a regular basis;
- * That which is *motivated by strong enthusiasm*—performed with fierce good feelings;
- * That which is *motivated only by* attitudes such as a lack of attachment—by thoughts which provide *the antidote* for negativities;
- * That which is *performed towards* the highest objects: *objects of high spiritual qualities* such as the Three Jewels or the like, *and* objects who have been *of great benefit*, such as your parents;
- * That which is performed towards objects which are *suffering*—the poor and the like.

स्थित्यः स्थान्यः स्थाः स्याः स्थाः स्थाः

I should become a master, and learn
To have great faith and enthusiasm;
They will lead me to perform deeds at all times.
I will learn to accomplish all kinds of virtue
Even if there's no one else at all
On whom I can depend.

त.र्जं.चे.र्यु.पदु.लब.क्ष्र्याचेर.ज.स्या.क्ष्या.ल.लट.र्ज्या.या.व

Here is the second. *I should become a master* of engaging in those actions which are to be taken up, and of avoiding those actions which are to be abandoned. And I should *learn to have great faith and enthusiasm* for virtuous deeds. *These* then *will lead me to perform* virtuous *deeds at all times*. And I will not perform these good deeds only because others have induced me to do so; *I will learn to accomplish all kinds of virtue even if there is no one else at all on whom I can depend to help me.*

|श्चेत्र:यदे:य:र्स्य:श्चेत्र:य:श्चेत्रश्य। |मॅर:दश:मॅर:दे:श्चेर:दे:श्चेर:ख्वाश:श्चुर। |स्ट्र:दुदे:श्चेर:दे:के:श्चे:मान्टः। |मॉर्ड:केर:माल्द:श्चे:र्द्द:पश्चशःश्चें।

I will perform the perfections Of giving and the rest So they are heightened ever further, And never give up the greater for the less: Concentrate on others' aims.

यक्षित्रात्ताः केताः वरः स्वातः स इतः इत्यो त्यः स्वातः स्व इतः इत्यो त्यः स्वातः स्व इत्यातः स्वातः स्वतः स्वातः स्व

यश्वरात्री ।के.क्ट्रायारायीयायह्याक्षात्रात्रीयाक्षात्रात्रीयाय्येयाः यश्वरात्री ।के.क्ट्रायारायीयायह्याक्षात्रात्रीयाक्षात्रात्रीयाय्येयाः

Here is the third. *I will perform the perfections of giving and "the rest,"* meaning all of those up to wisdom, in such a way that *they are heightened ever further;* that is, so they increase in strength. Whenever I engage in the perfections of giving, an ethical way of life, or any of the others, I should *never give up* activities which are of *greater* virtuous power *for* those which are of *less*—I should rather concentrate my efforts on the greater.

These lines are indicating, by implication, the following: where one is unable to perform both the action of lesser power and the one of greater power—where a time has come where one must choose between the two—then we should give up the deed of lesser virtue to prevent the greater one from being lost. How do we establish which deeds are greater, and which are lesser? If for example there is a choice between accomplishing one's own aims or someone else's aims in this present life—if by bringing about one you would lose the other—then you should *concentrate on others' aims*.

The third general section concerns training oneself in the ethical way of life in which one acts for the benefit of others. Here there are three parts: throwing oneself into the service of others; acting in ways which attract others to the teaching, while still striving to avoid being sullied by any bad deeds oneself; and training oneself in ways to preserve the opinions of others, and acting so that one is left unsullied by bad deeds.

|देग्वरःरेगःगुर्यःग्वरःर्देरःय। |ह्याःतःवर्द्धदःयरःयाद्यःयरःग्व। |ह्यायःहःस्वरःयःरेटःयाचेयायःयय। |प्यायाःयःहस्ययःग्वरःदेःयाच्यायःयय।

They should in this way learn, And then make efforts always To fill the needs of others. Those who possess compassion, Who see the distant, have allowed Even the prohibited.

Here is the first. One may ask the following question: "Bodhisattvas *should, in this way* mentioned above, *learn* the art of which actions to take up, and which to give up. *And then they should always make efforts to fill the needs of others.* Isn't it true though that, because filling the needs of others may require us to undertake a wide variety of different actions, we might ourselves become sullied by some bad deeds?"

Those who possess compassion, the Buddhas, see directly even those objects which are "distant," in the sense of being abstruse. There are certain actions, like the seven bad deeds of body and speech, which they have prohibited for listeners—for those who are working primarily for their own aims. On certain extraordinary occasions though, they have allowed even these same actions to bodhisattvas; when such persons perform these acts they are not only not a bad deed, but rather become the accumulation of great goodness.

The *Sutra on Skilful Means, the Great Secret,* for example mentions the ship captain named Great Compassion, who killed evil persons and thereby erased many eons of his future suffering in the cycle of life. There is also the incident that is stated to have occurred with the Brahmin youth named Karma.

The phrase "those who possess compassion, who see to a distance" can also be explained as referring to these bodhisattvas—the ones for whom the seven deeds of body and speech are allowed—themselves. [It should be noted at this point that the practice of performing one of the seven bad deeds for great goodness is severely restricted, to those who have been practicing the bodhisattva path literally for millions of years, and should not be construed as allowed for others.]

तत्। जैश्वात्वात्त्रेश्वात्त्रः श्रेत्वात्त्रः त्यात्त्रः त्यात्त्रः त्यात्त्रः त्यात्त्रः त्यात्त्रः त्यात्त्रः श्रेत्वात्वः त्यात्त्रः श्रेत्वः त्यात्त्रः श्रेत्वः त्यात्त्रः श्रेत्वः त्यात्त्रः श्रेत्वः त्यात्त्रः श्रेत्वः त्यात्त्रः त्यात्त्यः त्यात्त्यः त्यात्त्रः त्यात्त्यः त्यात्तः त्यात्यः त

The second part has two of its own: attracting others to the teaching through the use of material things, and attracting them through the Dharma. The first of these has three further sections: an explanation of the distinction between when to give food and clothing, and when not to give them; advice not to harm the body in order to accomplish some minor deed; and a description of the time and purpose when it would be appropriate to give up even one's own body.

I should offer an equal share
To those who have fallen wrong,
Who have no one to protect them,
Who are engaged in asceticism.
I myself should eat only the proper amount,
And give away any possession
Except for my three dharma robes.

यचवः यमः युः स्रे। गुनः र्सूनः स्याका यवेकः श्रीनः वक्षः यास्तरः यास्तरः युर्वा स्यान्त्रः स्यान्तः स्यान्त्रः स्यान्तः स्यान

Whenever I partake of food, I should also offer an equal share to each of the following, should they be present: to "those who have fallen wrong," meaning animals and tormented spirits; to the sick and others who have no one to protect them; and to those "who are engaged in asceticism"—referring to celibate, ordained persons.

I myself should follow the advice expressed in the phrase, "In all things judge the proper amount," and eat only the proper amount of food, without committing any of the inappropriate deeds which relate to partaking of food. The motivation and such for eating should be the same as that described in the Letter to a Friend.

स्टर्शन्तरःश्रीत्रम्वरःतरःक्ष्यःश्रीतःविश्वरःस्याःश्रीतःत्रः श्रीतःत्रमः श्रीतः विद्याः स्वरः स्वरः विद्याः स्वरः स्वरः

A bodhisattva who is a fully ordained monk should be ready to *give away any possession* he has, with the *exception* of his *three dharma robes*: his outer robe, his inner robe, and his lower robe. Even with these three robes, the bodhisattva may give away any extra ones that he may have, but may not give away those where he has no more than one, since this would be an obstacle to his practice of celibacy.

|५८४:यदे:र्क्र्याके:र्ह्युर्प्यदे:त्युर्या |५८४:र्क्रियाय:केर्-र्-यार्वेर-से:वु। 1रे सूर मुबाद बोसबा उद मी

|चर्याया:संकुर:रु:ह्याया:पर:वर्णुर।

I carry out the holy Dharma
With my body; I should never harm it
For some minor benefit.
If I am able to act this way,
Then I can quickly fulfil
The hopes of every living being.

त्रिस्त्रं विकासका स्वार्ध्यात्र्यं विकासका स्वार्ध्यात्र्यं स्वार्ध्यं स्वार्ध्यात्र्यं स्वार्यं स्वार्ध्यात्र्यं स्वार्यं स्वार्यं

Here is the second section. *My body* is a base from which *I carry out the holy Dharma*; it is something with which, if I care for it properly, I can accomplish vast purposes for myself and others. *I should never* do any kind of *harm* to *it* merely *for some minor benefit* that it might do for someone else—I should shield it in the same way I would an open wound. Why is this so? Because *if I am able to act this way, then I can*—by using the spiritual leisure and fortune which I've found—reach the culmination of the practice of the three trainings, and in this way *quickly fulfill the hopes of every living being*. As the *Four Hundred Verses* says,

We should admittedly view this body as though it were the enemy;
But all the same it is a thing we must protect as well.
It is an action which creates tremendous stores of merit
To live a life of many years maintaining one's morality.

बिर्देश प्रमान प्रम प्रमान प्

In both this and the future.

स्रियःश्वास्त्र्री, यद्भाराःक्षेत्रः देशःशालुषेः तत्रः योष्ट्रिटः यः यदेदः ग्रीः ताश्चाश्वाद्यः त्रिशः स्रियः विश्वः स्रियः यद्भाराः विश्वः योष्ट्यः यः यद्भाराः विश्वः योष्ट्यः यः यद्भाराः विश्वः योष्ट्यः यः यद्भाराः विश्वः योष्ट्यः यः यद्भाराः विश्वः योष्ट्यः यद्भाराः यद्भाराः विश्वः यद्भाराः यद्भाराः विश्वः यद्भाराः यद्भ

Here is the third part. It is admittedly true that bodhisattvas do, from the very beginning, offer their own bodies and the like to living beings from the very bottom of their hearts. I should never though perform the asceticism of giving away the flesh of my body or something of the like to someone who requests it in a way which involves an impure version of the thoughts of compassion where I am supposed to cherish others more than myself; that is, in such a way that I would feel distaste, or regret my offering later, or anything of the like. This point is expanded upon in the Compendium of Training, where a sutra is quoted which states that giving away things at the wrong time is the work of demons.

When there comes a time however when I have, on my side, freed myself from stinginess and other obstacles to the perfection of giving, and when I could without any problems thereby accumulate a great deal of virtuous energy, then I should no matter what give away my body, for this would act as a cause for me to achieve great goals in both this and all my future lives.

यत्। ग्री-प्रमायायात्रीया क्रमायप्तरः। क्रीक्रियःयात्रीयायात्रम्यायात्रम्यायात्रीयः ग्री-प्रमायायात्रीया क्रमायप्तरः। क्रीक्रियःयाय्त्रीयःयाय्त्रीयःयाय्त्रीयःयाय्त्रीयः

Here is the second part from above, about attracting others to the teachings through the Dharma. Here there are three points: notes on the proper behavior of a person who is listening to the Dharma—that is, a description of persons to whom it would be improper to teach the Dharma; learning to judge details of the state of mind of the person who is to receive the teachings; and instruction not to take a person who has an aptitude for the wide-reaching path and introduce them to one which is lesser.

|अर्ग्वास्यायाकेंस्यास्य विद्या |क्षेत्र प्रविद्य प्रविद्य प्रविद्यास्य प्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रवित्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रविद्यास्य प्रवित्य प्रविद्य प्रविद्य प्रविद्य प्रविद्य प्रविद्य प्रवित्य प्रविद्य प्रवित्य प्रविद्य प्रविद्य प्रवित्य प्रवित्य प्रवित्य प्रवित्य प

I should not teach the Dharma
To those who have no respect;
To those not ill wearing veils;
Who hold an umbrella, staff, or weapon;
Or who cover their heads with cloth.

भ्रम्भः स्वात्राक्ष्यां स्वात्राक्यां स्वात्राक्यां स्वात्राक्ष्यां स्वात्राक्यां स्वात्राक्य

Here is the first. I should not teach the Dharma to those who have no respect for the Dharma, or no respect for the one teaching the Dharma. Nor should I teach the Dharma to those who exhibit certain kinds of behavior, such as wearing veils or the like (assuming they are not doing so because they are ill); holding an umbrella, a staff, or some weapon; or covering the tops of their heads with cloth or such.

|मर्ख्रस्यायम्परम् स्वान्ते स

I should not teach the profound And far-reaching aspects to the lesser, Nor a woman without a male. I should follow the behavior Of respecting all Dharma equally, No superior or inferior kinds.

भर्ष्ट्यात्मर्ग्योकात्म्यान्त्रीयः भ्रित्रात्म्यान्त्रात्म्यान्याः स्वात्मान्त्रात्माः नीकात्मान्त्रात्माः नीकात्मान्त्रात्मान्त्रात्माः नीकात्मान्त्रात्माः नीकात्मान्त्रात्माः निकात्मान्त्रात्माः स्वात्मान्त्रात्माः स्वात्मान्त्रात्मान्त्रात्मान्त्रात्माः स्वात्मान्त्रत्यात्मान्त्यात्मान्त्रत्यात्मान्त्यान्त्रत्यात्मान्त्रत्यात्मान्त्यात्मान्त्यात्मान्त्रत्यात्मान्त्रत्या

Here is the second. *I should not teach the profound and far-reaching aspects* of the Dharma *to* those of *lesser* minds, to those who are not fit to receive these teachings. *Nor* should I teach the Dharma to *a woman* alone, *without* another *male* present.

It is further stated that one has committed the bad deed of rejecting the Dharma if one discriminates between different parts of the teaching, by saying for example that the teachings of the greater and lesser ways are, respectively, superior and inferior kinds of Dharma—one better than the other; one more proper than the other; one a way to enlightenment, and the other not; or anything of the like. I should therefore follow a code of behavior where I respect all of them equally, and put each of them into practice.

|\$\frac{1}{2}\frac{1}{

I should never take one who is fit
To receive the teachings of the far-reaching
And introduce them to a teaching which is lesser.
Neither should I ever abandon the code
Of behavior, nor abuse the open and secret
Teachings through deceiving someone.

Here is the third. *I should never take* a person who is the type who can follow the greater way, *one who is fit to receive the teachings of the far-reaching* way, *and introduce them to a teaching which is lesser*—that is, I should never lead them along the path of the listeners. This is because it is stated that, should I do so, I will have committed a transgression of my vows.

Neither should I ever abandon the code of behavior contained in the morality of restraint: I should never abuse the open and secret teachings through deceiving someone who is fit to receive their actual content by telling them that, to make themselves pure, all they need to do is to recite the open and secret teachings out loud.

सूर्य ततु. यु. ह. क्षेत्र यि या स्टर्ग केला यदु यीय सूर्य ततु हुर स्ट्रेस यि यह त्या स्टर्ग केला यद्वी त्या स् तीया ग्री सूर्य त्या प्रेश ता स्टराय क्ष्या तीटा या विषय सा स्टर्ग या स्टर्ग या सा ता सूर्या या स्था या सूर्य या सूर्य या सूर्य या सूर्य या स्टर्ग या सूर्य या सू

Here is the third overall section from above, which concerns training oneself in ways to preserve the opinions of others, and acting so that one is left unsullied by bad deeds. Here there will be an expanded explanation followed by a summary. The former of these two has three parts of its own: giving up physical actions which are wrong, and anything which would cause others to lose their faith; how to act when pointing out a road, or something of the like; and how to undertake the act of sleeping.

।र्खःविदःददःद्वेःसक्रेवःसःद्वा ।र्देरःचःदःदेःद्वाचःसरःद्वा ।वाद्यःवःस्वां स्वदःव्येदसःश्चेदःसदे। ।र्खःददःबदःवःदेरःचःश्चदा

I should, whenever I throw out
The cleaning stick, or spit,
Cover them up.
Disposing of urine or anything similar
In water or on a piece of ground
Which others use is rebuked.

Here is the first. Bodhisattvas who have also left the home life must, except in those cases which are specifically allowed, strictly maintain each detail of the code of behavior spoken in the collection of scripture devoted to discipline, which is something shared by both the greater and lesser ways. And even those bodhisattvas who are still leading the home life must as well maintain these points, in order to preserve the faith of others.

Therefore I should—whenever I throw out the so-shing stick which I use to clean my mouth, or whenever I spit—cover them up with dirt or the like. And since I would be rebuked by the powerful pleasure creatures and other such beings if I did so, I should avoid ever disposing of excrement or urine, or else mucus from my nose, or anything similar in water or on a piece of ground which others use along with me.

|त्यवाद्यायम्द्रम् स्ट्रिक्षः व्यव्याद्यः स्ट्रिक्षः स्ट्रिक्यः स्ट्रिक्षः स्ट्रिक्यः स्ट्रिक्षः स्ट्रिक्षः स्ट्रिक्षः स्ट्रिक्षः स्ट्रिक्यः स्ट्रिक्यः स्ट्रिक्यः स

I should never eat with my mouth stuffed, Nor with noise, or with my mouth open. Neither should I stick my legs out while I sit Nor rub my shoulders together.

श्राकुर्त । मेश्राक्रीश्राक्षेत्रायायाम् स्यान्य स्थान्य स्था

I should never eat in such a way that my mouth is totally stuffed with the food, or so that I make a loud smacking noise or anything of the like, or else with my mouth wide open. When I sit on a Dharma throne or similar seat, I should never stick my legs out touching the ground, or such. Neither should I rub myself on my shoulders together, meaning at the same time. It is however no fault if you rub yourself on your shoulders one at a time.

विर्वेद्गःस्ययः स्वदः व्यव्यः द्याः तृ। विद्वाः सेदः व्यव्यः स्वदः व्यव्यः सेः व्याः विद्वाः सेदः सः द्वाः सः व्याः सः व्याः सः व्याः सः व्याः सः व्या विद्वाः सेदः सः स्वतः स्वयः स्वयः

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Reading Ten

I should never stay in or on
A single conveyance, a single bed,
Or in the same place with another
Who is a woman. I should avoid
Any kind of behavior which might cause
People of the world to lose their faith,
Whether the obvious or the acquainted.

मुकासर्ह्याचार्यः पर्विषायाः विकायाः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः विकायः व

[As a monk,] *I should never stay in or on a single conveyance,* something like a horse or the like, or *on a single bed, or in the same place with another* person *who is a woman.* Even those bodhisattvas who are laypeople should avoid staying together with women who are not their own relatives.

In brief, I should avoid any kind of behavior which might cause people of the world to lose their faith, whether it is behavior that is obviously a problem to everyone everywhere, or whether it is something peculiar to that particular place or time, and therefore something that I might not already be aware of, but would have to acquaint myself with.

विकायार्यः विकायाः विकायः विकायाः विकायाः विकायाः विकायाः विकायाः विकायाः विकायाः विकायः विकायाः विकायः व

I should never point something out With my individual fingers, But rather use all my right hand, Right and with respect.
Thus too should I guide Any person along a way.

Here is the second. When I am *pointing out something* to someone, *I should never* do so *with individual fingers* of my left hand, since this would be something insulting them. *Rather* I should point *with* an attitude of *respect, using all* the fingers of *my right hand,* and turning it palm up, *right*. This too is the manner in which *I should guide any person along a way*.

चिविद्र-दुःस्यम्स्स्यः प्रस्ति । चित्राचित्रः प्रस्ति । चित्रः चर्ने प्रस्ति । चित्राचित्रः प्रस्ति । चित्रः चित्रः

I should never gesture with my hands In a very animated way, but rather Move them only a slight bit And make some type of noise Or snapping with them. Were I to act differently though It would show a lack of control.

क्ष्रमानुःक्षे म्वत्रपुः कराक्षुं क्ष्रमान्यां म्वत्रक्ष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विषयः विषयः

Unless there is some specific purpose to be served by doing so, *I should never gesture with my hands in a very animated way*, since this might lead me to become careless. *Rather* I could *move* my hands *only a slight bit, and make some type of a noise or snapping with them. It would though show a lack of controlled behavior if I were to act differently*, and make this noise too loudly.

वियाः अन्तर्भः द्वार्याः स्वार्याः स्वर्याः स्वार्याः स्वर्याः स्वर्यः स्वर्याः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्याः स्वर्याः स्वर्याः स्वर्यः

I should sleep in the desired direction, In the way the Savior laid down in "nirvana," With awareness from the very beginning I should be sure to rise up quickly.

क्षत्य प्रस्ति । विश्व प्रस्ति प्रस्त

Here is the third. Whenever I go to sleep, I should emulate *the way that the Savior* acted *when he laid down* and pretended to pass *into "nirvana."* That is, I should first lie with my head *in the desired direction*. Then I should lay with my right side down, and place my left leg atop my right. I should put my head down on my right hand, and wrap myself nicely in my dharma robes, and *sleep*.

As I go off to sleep I should place my mind on a virtuous object, and utilize the attitudes of recollection and *awareness*. *From the very beginning*, as sleep comes, *I should be sure* to keep a very luminous state of mind, where light fills my mind, and I should reflect upon how I will *rise up* from my sleep *quickly*. As I drift off I should think of how I am about to sustain my body with the sleep, and then afterwards make great efforts in performing virtuous deeds.

The different types of activities
Described as something that bodhisattvas
Should undertake are limitless.
I must acquaint my mind with them,
And practice til the time arrives,
As it surely will, when I can
Put them in my own life.

त्रवित्रस्य स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्य

Here is the second point from above. The various scriptures, and the commentaries which explain their true intent, describe different types of activities to be undertaken by bodhisattvas, activities which are unlimited. I would never be able to accomplish each and every one of these at present. Therefore from the very beginning *I must*, as mentioned above, acquaint my own mind with these activities, and practice until the time arrives, as it must, when *I* can put in my own life each and every one of these ways of living.



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class One

1) Name the root text we will be usi	ing in our study of the bodhisattva's way of life, its
author, and his approximate dates.	(Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

2) Name the famed commentary upon this text that we will be using; give the author's two names, and his exact dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

3) Describe briefly the event in Master Shantideva's life which taught the monks of Nalandra Monastery that they should never judge a person from his or her outward appearance. (Tibetan track also give the name in Tibetan which was given to this master by certain misguided people.)

4) Nam	ne the ten chapters of the Guide.	(Tibetan track in Tibetan)
((1)	
((2)	
((3)	
((4)	
((5)	
((6)	
((7)	
((8)	
((9)	
((10)	

Meditation assignment: Spend 15 minutes per day in prayer, requesting Master Shantideva for his blessing that you may truly be able to develop this wish in your heart.

Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



e)

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

4) The sutra called <i>Stalks in Array</i> says this holy wish is like a seed, a rich field, a wish-giving vase, and a sword. Explain each of these metaphors.
a)
b)
c)
d)
5) Explain how the wish for enlightenment destroys your bad deeds, and prevents you from being born in one of the lower realms?
6) Explain why nothing less than this precious wish could ever transform your entire world and your very being into something totally pure and enlightened.
Meditation assignment: Analytical meditation, 15 minutes per day on the role that the wish for enlightenment will play in the process of your own enlightenment. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Three
1) Give the four general divisions of the second chapter of the <i>Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life.</i> (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) Name and describe the highest objects of the practice of making offerings.
3) List the three general types of offering described in the <i>Guide</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)

	elve kinds of offerings n track in Tibetan.)	that you	can make	by emanating	them in yo	our
a)						
b)						
c)						
d)						
e)						
f)						
g)						
h)						
i)						
j)						
k)						
1)						
5) Describe bri	efly why the act of taki	ing refuge	e can actua	ally protect you		
Meditation assig	nment: 15 minutes of ar the twelve Jewels.			per day, go me and present the		
Meditation dates	s and times (must be fille	d in, or ho	mework wi	ill not be accepted	<i>1</i>):	



Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Four
1) Give the name of the original source of the teaching on the four forces of purification. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) List the four forces in the order in which they are presented in the detailed treatment of the forces in Gyaltsab Je's commentary upon the <i>Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)

3) Is the practice of the four forces effective even with bad deeds where the karma has been both committed and collected, making the experience of the result of the deeds certain?

4) Name the method we can use to achieve the level of regret required for the first of the four forces.

5) Name six different kinds of practices that can be effective in the practice of the third of the forces. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
6) Briefly describe the four steps used by Master Shantideva in his explanation of the first of the four forces.
a)
b)
c)
d)
7) Name the three steps in the explanation of the force of the foundation.
a)
b)
c)
8) What is the point of the comparison of the terror of death to a kind of punishment in which one of a person's limbs is cut off?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes a day, analytical meditation on the relationship between death and the four forces.

Meditation times and dates (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



c)

d)

e)

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Homework, Class Five
1) In his discussion of the third of the four forces of purificaton, Master Shantideva advises us to think of ourselves as sick people in need of medicine and a supreme physician. Describe the chronic disease that we are said to have. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) Name three important reasons why we should make great efforts in the practice of purifying ourselves through all four of the forces, together. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
3) Name five activities that function to help us collect the positive energy needed to reach the true wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)

4) Name three different levels of virtue in which we can rejoice.
5) Name and describe the opposite of rejoicing.
of Name and describe the opposite of rejoicing.
6) Name four kinds of dedication, and then describe what it is we are dedicating.
a)
b)
c)
d)
What we are dedicating:
7) What are we wishing for when we make dedication?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, sit in meditation posture and rejoice in the goodness of yourself and others, at all three levels. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Six
1) Why does Master Shantideva recommend the practice of taking joy, once one has attained the two forms of the wish for enlightenment?
2) Describe four things that uplift our hearts as we first gain the two forms of the wish. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
3) Name five ways in which the wish has the power to remove the sufferings of living beings. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)

4) <i>How</i> is it that the wish can remove these sufferings in every living being?
5) Name and describe the two kinds of obstacles that the wish has the power to destroy. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.) a)
b)
6) What, according to Gyaltsab Je, is the "very highest way of all to get the essence out of having achieved this human body and mind"?
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, analytical meditation on how the wish for enlightenment has the power to remove all the sufferings of every living being. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Seven
1) Name four different steps in the process of considering how the mental afflictions hurt us.
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) Give the standard definition of a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
3) Name the six primary mental afflictions. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

	ribe the five kinds of wrong views that make up the sixth (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)	
b)	
c)	
d)	
e)	
5) What does Master Shan nirvana until others do so	tideva say about the idea that one should hold off achieving first?
-	minutes per day, analytical meditation upon how specific mental afflictions that you yourself have hurt you, in the four steps given by Master Shantideva.
Meditation dates and times ((must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Eight
1) There are twenty secondary mental afflictions. Name and describe any six of them. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
2) What does Gyaltsab Je have to say about the idea that a strong love for the Path, and hatred for your mental afflictions, are mental afflictions themselves?
3) Why is it important that the continued existence of the mental afflictions depends on a misperception?

4) State three reasons why the mental afflictions have no place else to go, once they are eliminated from the mind. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
5) List the six perfections, the six principal activities of a bodhisattva, and explain why they are perfections. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
6) Does the perfection of giving depend on its external perfection? Why or why not?
7) Name the external objects which need not be eliminated for each of the first three perfections to be perfect.
a)
b)
c)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, examining your mind and life for your most common secondary mental afflictions. Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):



c)

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Nine
1) Describe the context in which Master Shantideva distinguishes between recollection and watchfulness. (Tibetan track also give the names for these two in Tibetan.)
2) Give the four divisions of the section devoted to how one should maintain how they look with their eyes. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
3) Name three special circumstances under which one may be allowed to let up, temporarily, from the normally very detailed scrutiny of one's thoughts and bodily actions.
a)
b)

4) Explain the reasoning behind the ordering of the six perfections. (Tibetan track mention the six in Tibetan also.)
5) Name six separate occasions on which Master Shantideva says we should freeze, and stay like a bump on a log. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day, on situations that recently came up in which we should have frozen like a bump on a log, and what goodness we might have done if we hadn't frozen. Meditation dates and times (must be completed, or homework will not be accepted):



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Homework, Class Ten
1) Name six different qualities mentioned by Master Shantideva that make the perfection of giving very powerful karmically. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
2) What two things does Master Shantideva say about prioritizing one's efforts in the six perfections? (Tibetan track: Give the word for "prioritization" in Tibetan.) a)
b)
3) State three principles which Master Shantideva discusses with regard to the morality of acting on behalf of living beings. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)

4) Name three principles in the practice of attracting other persons to the Dharma through material giving. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
5) Name three principles in the practice of attracting other persons through the giving of the Dharma itself. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
6) Name three principles for the practice of training oneself in activities that maintain the good opinions of others in the Dharma, and that prevent oneself from being polluted by bad deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
Meditation assignment: 15 minutes per day on the principle of priorities in one's practice, examining your own life and priorities against those of the six perfections.
Meditation dates and times (must be filled in, or homework will not be accepted):

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

(8)

(9)

(10)

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class One
1) Name the root text we will be using in our study of the bodhisattva's way of life, its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) Name the famed commentary upon this text that we will be using; give the author's two names, and his exact dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
3) Name the ten chapters of the <i>Guide</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Two

1) Give th	ne definition	of the	wish for	enlightenment	(bodhichitta)	according	to	Lord
Maitreya.	(Tibetan tra	ck in Ti	betan.)					

2) The sutra called *Stalks in Array* says that this holy wish is like a seed, a rich field, a wish-giving vase, and a sword. Explain each of these metaphors.

- a)
- b)
- c)
- d)

3) Explain why nothing less than this precious wish could ever transform your entire world and your very being into something totally pure and enlightened.



Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Three
1) Name and describe the highest objects of the practice of making offerings.
2) List the three general types of offering described in the <i>Guide</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)

3) Describe briefly why the act of taking refuge can actually protect you.



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Four
1) List the four forces in the order in which they are presented in the detailed treatment of the forces in Gyaltsab Je's commentary upon the <i>Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) Is the practice of the four forces effective even with bad deeds where the karma has been both committed and collected, making the experience of the result of the deeds certain?
3) Name six different kinds of practices that can be effective in the practice of the third of the forces. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

4) What is the point of the comparison of the terror of death to a kind of punishment in which one of a person's limbs is cut off?



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Five

1) In his d	iscussion	of the th	ird of the	four forces	of purification,	Master Shantideva
advises us	to think	of ourse	lves as sic	k people in	need of medic	ine and a supreme
physician.	Describe	the chro	onic diseas	e that we a	re said to have	. (Tibetan track in
Tibetan.)						

2) Name five activities that function to help us collect the positive energy needed to reach the true wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

- a)
- b)
- c)
- d)
- e)
- 3) Name and describe the opposite of rejoicing.
- 4) What are we wishing for when we make dedication?



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

4) *How* is it that the wish can remove these sufferings in every living being?

λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

Name:
Date:
Grade:

Quiz, Class Seven
1) Name four different steps in the process of considering how the mental afflictions hurt us.
a)
b)
c)
d)
2) Give the standard definition of a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
3) Name the six primary mental afflictions. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Eight
1) There are twenty secondary mental afflictions. Name and describe any six of them. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
2) What does Gyaltsab Je have to say about the idea that a strong love for the Path, and hatred for your mental afflictions, are mental afflictions themselves?
3) Why is it important that the continued existence of the mental afflictions depends on a misperception?
4) Does the perfection of giving depend on its external perfection? Why or why not?



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Nine

1) Describe the con	ntext in which Master Shantideva distinguishes between	recollection
and watchfulness.	(Tibetan track also give the names for these two in Tibe	etan.)

- 2) Give the four divisions of the section devoted to how one should maintain how they look with their eyes. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a)
 - b)
 - c)
 - d)
- 3) Explain the reasoning behind the ordering of the six perfections. (Tibetan track mention the six in Tibetan also.)

Λ	THE ASIAN CLASSICS
X	Institute

c)

Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Quiz, Class Ten
1) Name six different qualities mentioned by Master Shantideva that make the perfection of giving very powerful karmically. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
2) State three principles which Master Shantideva discusses with regard to the morality of acting on behalf of living beings. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
3) Name three principles in the practice of attracting other persons to the Dharma through material giving. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) a)
b)



Name:	
Date:	
Grade:	

Final Examination
1) Name the root text we will be using in our study of the bodhisattva's way of life, its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
2) Name the famed commentary upon this text that we will be using; give the author's two names, and his exact dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
3) Name the ten chapters of the <i>Guide</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)

4) Give the definition of the wish for enlightenment (<i>bodhichitta</i>) according to Lord Maitreya. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
5) Explain why nothing less then this precious wish could ever transform your entire world and your very being into something totally pure and enlightened.
6) Name and describe the highest objects of the practice of making offerings.
7) List the three general types of offering described in the <i>Guide</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.) a) b) c)
8) Describe briefly why the act of taking refuge can actually protect you.

9) List the four forces in the order in which they are presented in the detailed treatment of the forces, in Gyaltsab Je's commentary upon the <i>Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life</i> . (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
10) Name six different kinds of practices that can be effective in the practice of the third of the forces. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)
11) What is the point of the comparison of the terror of death to a kind of punishment in which one of a person's limbs is cut off?

12) In his discussion of the third of the four forces of purification, Master Shantideva advises us to think of ourselves as sick people in need of medicine and a supreme physician. Describe the chronic disease that we are said to have. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
13) Name five activities that function to help us collect the positive energy needed to reach the true wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
14) Describe four things that uplift our hearts as we first gain the two forms of the wish. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)

15) Name five ways in which the wish has the power to remove the sufferings of living beings. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
16) <i>How</i> is it that the wish can remove these sufferings in every living being?
17) Give the standard definition of a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
18) Name the six primary mental afflictions. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)
d)
e)
f)

19) Why is it important that the continued existence of the mental afflictions depends on a misperception?
20) List the six perfections, the six principal activities of a bodhisattva, and explain why they are perfections. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
21) Does the perfection of giving depend on its external perfection? Why or why not?
22) Explain the reasoning behind the ordering of the six perfections. (Tibetan track mention the six in Tibetan also.)

23) Name si stay like a b	six separate occasions on which Master Shantideva says we should freeze, a bump on a log. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)	and
a)		
b)		
c)		
d)		
e)		
f)		
	six different qualities mentioned by Master Shantideva that make the perfect ery powerful karmically. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)	ion
a)		
b)		
c)		
d)		
e)		
f)		

25) Name three principles in the practice of attracting other persons to the Dharma through material giving. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
a)
b)
c)

Please PRINT your name clearly, exactly as you would like it to appear on your certificate and the address to which the certificate should be sent.
Please circle one or specify other: Mr. Ms. Mrs. Miss Venerable
Name as you would like it to appear on the certificate:
Mailing name, if different:
Address
City State Zip code
Country

These notes were taken by a student in class, and should be used for reference only. Please check them against the audio for accuracy of content.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class One: The Author, and Structure of the Text

The reason you're in this class is because you're going to die. Getting old and dying has a cause. The purpose of the class is to study the forces which cause your world, and the causes which give you things and also will take it all away (including your life and identity). The point of class is to study and change those forces, so that life isn't endlessly about change, loss and suffering. The Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life is a handbook on how to affect those forces so that you don't have to suffer and die. The point of Buddhism is to learn how not to suffer to live in paradise forever. This is the guidebook on how to do that.

The Root Text and Author:

JANG-CHUB SEMPAY CHUPA LA JUKPA Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, way of life Buddhahood warrior entering the main text for the course

Bodhisattva - charya avatara (skt.) into

The short name for the text. **CHUN** JUK

learning how to act

GYALSE SHIWA HLA skt: Shantideva (c. 700 A.D.) The author of the Guide

Bodhisattva peace angel

Shanti deva

The Commentary:

GYALTSAB DARMA RINCHEN (1364-1432) is his monk's name. He IE

throne holder of Je (Tsongkapa) was Je Tsongkapa's student, who wrote the commentary:

GYALSE JUK-NGOK Entry Point for Children of the Victorious Buddhas child of Buddhas entry point

DUSHE SUMBAWA (skt: Bhusuku)

on your mind only 3 things

"Mister Three Thoughts." This was Master Shantideva's nickname in the monastery

Outline of the 10 Chapters:

1. JANG-CHUB KYI SEM KYI PEN YUN

Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment. Getting you excited about being a bodhisattva and having bodhichitta, which means to be a spiritual warrior and to fight against the mental afflictions in your own mind, the true

battleground.

2. DIKPA SHAKPA **Purifying Bad Deeds**. The process by which you set your mind up to become a bodhisattva; you clean

your mind and its negative energies in preparation to

becoming a bodhisattva.

3.	JANG-	CHUB	KYI	SEM	SUNGWA	

Acquiring the Wish for Enlightenment. Includes a) developing the state of mind of a bodhisattva, and b) the ceremony to commit yourself to becoming a bodhisattva. It covers many techniques for collecting good energy. You learn to draw in the spiritual energy of the universe, after first getting rid of negative energy through the methods described in chapter two; you clean out your mind and then build up positive energy so that you have the basis to acquire bodhichitta.

4. BAK-YU TENPA

Learning to Be Careful. Once you learn how to think and act like a bodhisattva, you must take good care of that new frail ability, like a newborn baby.

5. SHE-SHIN SUNGWA

Guarding Awareness (and recollection). Setting the watchman which alerts you when you're about to misbehave, and keeps you focused on what you're supposed to be thinking about.

6. SUPA TENPA

The Chapter on Not Getting Angry. The art of not getting angry when circumstances warrant becoming angry.

7. TSUNDRU TENPA

Joyous Effort. Having a good time doing good things; being excited or enthusiastic about doing good.

8. SAMTEN TENPA

The Chapter on Meditation. Meditation is the platform from which you can see emptiness directly.

9. SHERAB KYI LEU

The Chapter on Wisdom.

10. NGOWAY LEU

The Chapter on Dedication. Taking a good thing you've done, trying to see the long-term effects of that deed, and dedicating it towards a particular goodness. Seeing the outcome of what you did.

<u>The Six Perfections</u>— A bodhisattva's activities, and how they correspond to the chapters:

1. Giving	Chapter 10	4. Joyous Effort	Chapter 7
2. Morality	Chapter 5	5. Concentration	Chapter 8
3. Not Getting Angry	Chapter 6	6. Wisdom	Chapter 9

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Two: Bodhichitta, the Five Paths

JANGCHUB SEM KYE Bodhichitta

Enlightenment mind develop

The Five Paths:

LAM NGA

The Five Paths. Five stages you progress through in order to become enlightened, five levels of spiritual development:

1. **TSOK LAM Path of Accumunation.** Real renunciation is reached on this accumulation path path. It's very hard to reach.

2. **JOR LAM Path of Preparation**. It's marked by four stages. You begin to understand more about emptiness with each stage, which leads to...

3. **TONG LAM**seeing path

It lasts 15-20 minutes the first time. The second part of the Path of Seeing is what you experience when you come out of the direct perception of emptiness. It leads to...

4. **GOM** LAM Path of Habituation. You are getting used to what you saw during the path of seeing. You're applying what you saw at the path of seeing to your everyday life. It leads to...

5. **MI LOB LAM Path of No More Learning**. If you have bodhichitta at this level, you reach total Buddhahood; if not, you reach nirvana. This path is the final result, the ultimate goal.

Maitreya's Definition of the Wish:

SEMKYE PA NI SHENDUN CHIR YANGDAK DZOKPAY JANGCHUB DU wish for enlightenment bodhichitta YANGDAK DZOKPAY JANGCHUB DU total enlightenment want to reach

"Bodhichitta, the Wish for enlightenment, is the desire to reach total enlightenment for the benefit of all beings."

Bodhichitta Felt after Seeing Emptiness:

You feel a very special instance of bodhichitta just after seeing emptiness directly; this is very different from the general bodhichitta. It relates to two types of wisdom:

1. NYAMSHAK YESHE extremely deep wisdom meditation	The wisdom attained in extremely deep meditation, the direct perception of emptiness.
2. JE TOB YESHE subsequent wisdom	The wisdom you attain just after the direct perception of emptiness.

If you're on the Mahayana track, then you have an extraordinary, almost orgasmic thought to help every living being, as though a flood light is emanating out of your chest. All your relationships, all your money, everything is for others. It's great to be released from the attitude of taking care of yourself alone. One minute of this feeling is worth everything. You overcome selfishness. You <u>must</u> meditate 1-2 hours every day to reach this state.

Two Kinds of Bodhichitta:

(This description of the two kinds of bodhichitta specifically relates to seeing emptiness, not to general bodhichitta without seeing emptiness.)

1. MUN SEM	The wish for enlightenment in the form of a prayer.	The emotion that
	you will devote all of your future lives to helping others.	It's like planning
	and wanting to do it, having this ideal.	

2. **JUK SEM**The wish for enlightenment in the form of action. All throughout every day you constantly look around to see how you can help others. It's not a conscious thought, but an undercurrent which leads you to always be looking for opportunities to help others. Committing yourself to bodhisattva vows and doing the six perfections.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Three: Preliminaries to Gaining Bodhichitta

Three Preliminaries:

GEL KYEN TUN KYEN hindering condition conducive condition

There are things which block you from reaching a state where you care about others as much as yourself, and there are things which are conducive which you must gather and arrange. The blocks are inner spiritual obstacles, which you are not even aware of, that prevent you from reaching your spiritual goals.

After you have aspiring bodhichitta and engaging bodhichitta you must remove the obstacles to achieving *real* bodhichitta. You do that by removing negative imprints (karma). **Before you can purify negative karma, you must clear the obstacles to successfully purifying negative karma.**

DIKPA SHAKPA Purification.

bad deeds split yourself open

Three Preliminaries to Purifying Karma:

- 1. Doing prostrations
- 2. Taking refuge
- 3. Making offerings.

You must do these to collect the positive energy needed to be able to purify karmic imprints. You can't purify karma without doing these. If you do not purify karma, you will never be able to develop real bodhichitta.

1. CHAK TSELWA <u>Prostrations</u>.

hand to look for something

When you prostrate the idea is that you think, "I'm in the presence of the Dharmakaya, and I must get down on the ground." You think, "I believe the Dharmakaya is present, and the Buddha exists, and I acknowledge it." That's the point of prostrating; if you don't think that, then there is no point in prostrating. It's a chance to do something that is purely a sacred act, not commercial, admirable to others, etc.

The objects of our prostrations (also of taking refuge and making offerings):

KOYN	CHOK	SUM	The Three Jewels:
very rare	highest	three	

A. SANGYE KONCHOK Buddha Iewel

Pictures representing the Buddha are the "nominal" (so called) Buddha Jewel. They are not the main Buddha Jewel. The main Buddha Jewel is the Dharmakaya, the emptiness of the Buddha. (The Buddha Jewel is different than the Buddha.)

B. CHU KONCHOK Dharma **Jewel**

The books and teachings are the nominal Dharma Jewel. The real Dharma Jewel is seeing emptiness directly, the five Paths which lead to the direct perception of emptiness, and the cessations which result from seeing emptiness. So we bow down to the direct perception of emptiness and its resulting cessations. (The Dharma Jewel is different than the Dharma.)

Jewel Sangha

C. GENDUN KONCHOK The nominal Sangha Jewel is ordained monks and nuns. The real Sangha Jewel is everyone who has perceived emptiness directly.

2. KYAM DRO

Taking Refuge. You take refuge in the Three Jewels. Taking refuge is what makes you a Buddhist. You take refuge for protection from suffering and death. **** Buddhism offers almost no protection until you understand emptiness well. Emptiness is the protection. ****

3. CHUPA

Making Offerings. You should offer things that are significant to you, and without any ulterior motives of personal gain. It's a statement that you believe there are beings beyond this world. Those beings derive no benefit from your offering. They experience everything as bliss all the time; your offerings give them nothing unique—offerings are not for their benefit, but for your own. You are preparing for purification—you must change yourself, your mind, and its predispositions. Offering creates positive energy for that.

Three Kinds of Offerings:

1. DAKPU MASUNG WAY DZE

Offering things that no one owns: mountains, the sky, etc.

2. RANG GI LU ULWA your own body offer

Offering your own body: putting yourself at the service of the Three Jewels; spending your life doing service.

CLASS NOTES Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Class Three, continued

3. LU TRULWAY CHUPA with emanate offer mind

Offerings you send out with your own mind: Fantasize beautiful things in your mind and and offer them. Really get into it and enjoy it. It changes your thoughts and behavior. Master Shantideva mentions twelve such offerings.

If you go for refuge, prostrate, or make offerings without thinking about the emptiness of the Buddha, the direct perception of emptiness, and those who have seen emptiness, you're not doing it properly and it won't prepare you to purify negative karma. You won't be able to purify negative imprints and gain bodhichitta.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Four: How to Purify Negativity

Removing Obstacles to Getting Bodhichitta:

Preparing and setting things up properly is critical for succeeding in any undertaking. If all the causes and conditions are established, the result must happen—you can't stop it. Acquiring bodhichitta is very difficult, and to get it all of the preliminaries must be in place. If you establish the causes and conditions it must, and will, arise in your mind. Prostrating, going for refuge and making offerings are a warm-up to prepare you to purify your mind of bad deeds. Purification is necessary to develop bodhichitta, and if you don't do these, purification won't work.

To become enlightened you must stop collecting negative karma (doing non-virtue), eliminate all old bad karma, and collect only good karma. Purification is the practice of wiping out old negative mental imprints (karma).

Purifying Negative Mental Imprints:

TOB SHI forces four

<u>Four Forces</u>. If you have these four elements, you can wipe out the negative imprints (karma) in your mind, or reduce their effect so those that would lead to a hell rebirth ripen as merely a headache, for example. *All four forces must be present for this to work*.

CHU SHI TENPAY DO practice 4 which teaches sutra

Sutra which Teaches the Four Practices. Lord Buddha taught the four forces. This is the name of the sutra which Gyaltsab Je refers to in his teaching of the four forces.

The Four Forces:

1. **NAMPAR SUN JINPAY TOB** rip out, destroy force

<u>Destruction Force</u>: Regret. The "intelligent regret of an educated Buddhist." This is the one that badly damages the imprint—regret is behind the destruction. This is the regret of a person who understands how karma is planted in the mind, and how once you have committed a bad deed you have just set yourself up to suffer in the future. This intelligent regret is very different from feeling guilty.

2. **TEN GYI TOB** foundation of force

Foundation Force: Refuge and Bodhichitta, the foundation which you use to get back up after falling. You need some solid ground to stand upon. By remembering refuge (emptiness) and bodhichitta (the wish to help others) you re-establish that correct motivation as your foundation, as the ground and basis of your behavior.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Four, continued

3. NYENPO KUNTU CHUPAY TOB antidote activity force **Antidote Force**. Undertaking an activity to make up for what you did.

Six Antidote Activities:

profound study sutras

1. DODE SAMBO LA TENPA Study the scriptures that teach emptiness. You must have in mind that you are studying for the purpose of purifying a specific misdeed. Even just fifteen minutes of study is okay.

2. TONGPA NYI GOMPA emptiness of meditating **Meditate on emptiness**. This is the most powerful antidote.

3. DEPA LA TENPA practice repeat

Recite secret mantras. In order for a mantra to work, it must have been composed by a very holy being, and the person who is reciting it must have a good heart, and pure motivation. If both of these elements are present, mantras can be incredibly powerful. To use a mantra for purification, think of the bad deed, and wish to purify it as you recite the mantra.

4. KU SUK LA TENPA holy body practice **Practice of the holy bodies**. Making altars, statues, paintings, stupas, and so on of the images and forms of holy beings.

5. CHUPA LA TENPA offering practice

Practice giving offerings.

6. TSEN LA TENPA name practice **Practice the names**. Learning and reciting the names of holy beings, with devotion.

4. NYEPA LE LARN DOKPAY TOB bad deed turn away from force **Restraint Force**. The resolution not to do the deed again. This is the one which makes the four forces work. Resolve not to do the bad deed for a realistic amount of time, so that you will not also be telling a lie by saying that you will never do it again when you will slip, or forget and do it again. Promise that, "I won't have that negative thought for the next hour," or "I won't do that deed at all in the next month."

We collect vast amounts of karma (mostly non-virtuous) each day. Doing purification once in a while will <u>not</u> be significant enought to destroy vast accumulations of negative karma. You must do karmic purification consistently and frequently, or it will never keep pace with and overcome your negativities. You should do the Four Forces every day, and you don't have to be in meditation to do it. Every time Master Atisha had a bad thought, he would stop immediately to purify it.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Class Five: Collecting Goodness and Removing Obstacles

The Antidote to Negative Karma:

NYENPO KUNTU CHUPAY TOB

The antidote force for purifying negative karma.

Understanding emptiness is the ultimate antidote.

Two thoughts can't co-exist in one mind at the same time. When you have an understanding of emptiness in your mind, other afflicted reactions/thoughts can't be there at the same time. This is why emptiness is the ultimate antidote to negative afflictions and karma. This antidote is applied to:

The Three Poisons:

DUK SUM poison three

The Three Poisons, the main disease in our minds which causes afflictions. These poisons are in our mind all the time, circulating constantly like poison in your blood. They hurt you, and are always with you. If could you get rid of them, you would feel much better. The three poisons are: liking things ignorantly, disliking things ignorantly, and ignorance itself.

<u>The technical definition of liking things ignorantly</u> (aka, desire, attachment):

SAK CHE KYI NGUPO LA YI-ONG DU NGANG NE impure of thing attractive appears to be

RANG TOB KYI MI DREL WAR DUPAY SEM-JUNG SEMPA independently doesn't want to lose wants mental function thought

A mental function (thought) that doesn't want to lose something which is actually impure, but which appears as attractive.

Liking something ignorantly means to like something which is impure, and will later change into suffering—being attracted to things in a way which can't bring you ultimate satisfaction or happiness. The karma behind the object you're attracted to will wear out and you will lose it.

Ignorant desire misapprehends or mistakes its object; it sees the object and misunderstands it. When you see the object as anything other than your own projection forced upon you by your past karma, you are misperceiving the object. When you misperceive the object, then you can have mental afflictions toward it-"stupid" desire, or "stupid" disliking. When you perceive the object correctly—as an empty object which you're perceiving a certain way because of your past karma—you can't have stupid desire or disliking toward it. "Stupid" implies you would do something non-virtuous to get it.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Five, continued

Four Steps for Collecting Negative Karma.

- 1. You misunderstand the object; you think it exists independent of your own projections
- 2. You want the object
- 3. You are willing to do something unethical to get it
- 4. You collect bad karma

If step number one isn't present, you can't collect bad karma. If you understand that good objects only come from doing good, you won't commit non-virtue to get good objects. "Stupid" liking and disliking is based upon being willing to do non-virtue because of ignorance about the nature of where good things come from.

Non-stupid liking or disliking is to have wisdom, to understanding the emptiness of an object while you are experiencing it. For example, wanting good things while understanding that you must do virtue to experience empty objects as enjoyable; or disliking unpleasant things and thinking that you must avoid non-virtue to avoid experiencing empty objects as unpleasant things.

Intelligent liking is enjoying something while understanding it's emptiness, while understanding that the experience is forced upon you as a result of virtue done in the past, which you must experience as a good result. Revel and rejoice in your past virtue!

Three Reasons to Use the Four Forces to Purify Negative Karma:

1. **LENDRE KYI NAMYE LA MIKEPA** actions/consequences all details don't understand

We don't understand what's right and wrong very well. Therefore we must purify the bad deeds we do, even through we may not be aware that we did anything non-virtuous.

2. CHANGSE SHE-KYANG DOR LEN TSUL SHIN DU MI JEPA a bit may understand, but take up/give up in the proper way don't do

Even if we understand karma a little, we can't control ourselves to do the right thing: we can't apply what we do know very well; we are unable to do what benefits us and avoid what hurts us. We are constantly collecting bad karma at a vast rate. Purification must be well applied, serious, and consistent to overcome our non-virtues. If you do this, the purification overcomes the bad deeds and things will improve in your life in a noticeable way. Wimpy purification won't have much noticeable effect. As you purify old bad karmas they ripen as small sufferings and things will seem worse to you. After the old collection of bad karma is used up in this way your life will begin to improve, unless you generate more non-virtue than you purify.

3. **JANG SEM KYEWAY GEK - JONG** bodhichitta able to develop obstacle remove it

Purification clears away the obstacles to reaching the state of mind where you can love others as much as you love yourself.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Five, continued

After you have cleared away the obstacles (negativities in your mind) to getting bodhichitta by doing the Four Forces, you must collect some positive energy—conducive conditions—which help bodhichitta to grow.

Five Practices for Collecting Positive Energy Needed to Gain Bodhichitta:

1. **YI RANG Rejoicing**. Be happy about the good things that you and others do. Feel joy about them.

Three Levels of Rejoicing:

- 1. Being happy about anything good you're doing to get to a higher realm is called first-level rejoicing. This mostly involves avoiding the ten non-virtues.
- 2. Being happy about you or another doing good things to get to nirvana. This mainly involves doing things to permanently remove your mental afflictions, and most specifically involves seeing emptiness.
- 3. Being happy about things done by yourself or others to become fully enlightened.
- 2. **KULWA**Asking holy beings to teach dharma. Buddhist teachers normally won't teach you unless you ask (three times is traditional), and you must ask in the right way. Asking in the right way means primarily to demonstrate that you're applying what they've already taught you, and are making others happier rather than the opposite.
- 3. **SOLNDEB** Requesting your teachers to stay, not to pass on to nirvana, not to pass away. The act of asking them to remain creates the karma for them to continue appearing to you. If your karma wears out, your teacher will leave you.
- 4. **NGOWA**Dedication. Putting your good virtue in the bank to be saved and used for enlightenment, rather than cashing it in on temporary pleasures. If you don't dedicate your virtues, they can be destroyed by non-virtue.

Four kinds of Dedication:

- 1. General dedication: "May all beings become enlightened by this deed."
- 2. Dedicating virtue to help sick people.
- 3. Dedicating virtue to help hungry and thirsty people.
- 4. Dedicating virtue so that all beings can get anything they want.
- 5. **TONG SEM** Generosity, Surrender. Total willingness to give up everything you have for other people—your body, anything you own, and all your goodness (good karma). This isn't the perfection of giving, but a warm up for it.

If you don't practice all five of these strongly and sincerely, you won't get bodhichitta.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Six: Taking Joy

We have thus far described three steps that must be taken to successfully develop bodhichitta:

- 1. Doing the three preliminaries prior to purifying negative mental imprints.
- 2. Purifying the negative mental imprints which are obstacles to gaining bodhichitta with the four forces.
- 3. Collecting the positive energy needed to gain bodhichitta through the five practices.

The next step is to take bodhisattva vows for aspiring and engaging bodhichitta. After that there is another step, which is tonight's subject. Traditionally, there are two bodhichitta ceremonies. The second ceremony was to commit yourself to engaging bodhichitta; the first ceremony was to vow to try to get bodhichitta "in the form of a prayer." This initial ceremony includes:

- 1. Purifying obstacles
- 2. Collecting positive energy
- 3. The ceremony to get the wish
- 4. Taking joy, after the ceremony occurs:

Taking Joy:

GAWA GOMPA joy. Being totally happy that you took the bodhisattva vows. Having joy and dwelling on the emotion of joy. Being very happy that you took the ceremony and the pledge. This is a very important step after you have taken the ceremony; it cements it into your mind and sets the stage for your bodhichitta to increase and flourish after the ceremony. You must sit down and feel happy after the ceremony. This is very important.

Being happy after the ceremony has two parts: being happy for yourself, and making others happy.

Being happy for yourself: Think about how bodhichitta is going to accomplish your own goals. This has three parts:

1. **SENG TUPA Uplift your heart**. Be happy and pumped up that you made a commitment to help all others for the rest of your life. Just making the commitment is a great thing, even if you keep it weakly.

DENGDU DAKTSE DREBU YU; MIYI SIPA LEKPAR TOB from this moment my life fruitful human rebirth well achieved

DERING SANGYE RIKSU KYE; SANGYE SESU DAK GYUR TO today Buddhas their family born into Buddhas royal child I have become

From this moment on, my life has become fruitful; I have truly achieved a human rebirth, been born again; Today I've been born into the Buddha's family; Now I have become a child of the Buddhas.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Six:, continued

- 2. Now that you have this commitment, you should wish to keep it, and to keep it nicely.
- 3. Think about the rarity of what you have just done. You are one in a million. Of all those in existence, almost no one has bodhichitta. You have determined to make every act be for others' benefit, to devote everything, to give up your whole life to try to reach enlightenment to help all beings be happy. This is the incredible rarity of getting the bodhichitta commitment.

Being happy about how you can help others by having bodhichitta:

Think about how you will be able to destroy all of the sufferings of others by having bodhichitta. You now have some ammunition to destroy others' sufferings.

Five ways you can liberate others from suffering by having bodhichitta:

1. **DROWAY CHIDAK JOMPA** beings lord of death destroy

Destroy the lord of death for other beings. The lord of death is inside you. It is the condition which you are born with, your impending death. If you develop real compassion, you will be able to stop other people's death, as well as your own. Only by developing compassion can you become fully enlightened and stop your own death, and then you can teach others to do the same.

2. **ULWA JOMPA** poverty destroy

Destroy material and spiritual poverty. If you get real bodhichitta or take the wish, you are taking the first step toward being able to remove the poverty of others. You get to that state yourself (being freed of poverty) and teach others how to do it.

3. **NE JOMPA** illness destroy

Destroy the mental afflictions and physical illness of others (using the same process as above.)

4. **CHIR DUK-NGEL JOMPA** in general suffering destroy

Destroy the suffering of others in general—every kind of suffering in all the realms.

5. **KYEPAR NGENSON GYI DUK-NGEL JOMPA** particularly 3 lower realms of suffering destroy

Destroy the suffering of the three lower realms (hells, craving spirits and animals) in particular.

You eliminate the sufferings of beings, and you also eliminate the two causes of those sufferings:

CLASS NOTES
Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I
Class Six:, continued

Two Causes of All Sufferings:

1. **NYUN DRIP** mental affliction obstacle

Mental affliction obstacles are obstacles which primarily prevent you from reaching nirvana, and secondarily prevent you from reaching full enlightenment. There are certain states in your mind which are preventing you from reaching nirvana. These obstacles are: mental afflictions themselves, and the tendency to see things as self-existent. Once you remove these obstacles you have reached nirvana. You must see emptiness directly to do this.

2. SHE DRIP knowledge obstacle

Obstacles to total knowledge (omniscience). When you remove these, you become an enlightened being. You destroy the subtlest seed for seeing self-existence.

After you have removed your mental affliction obstacles (which occurs on the eighth bodhisattva level), you must remove the obstacles to your omniscience (on bodhisattva levels nine and ten you are working mainly to gain omniscience) and destroy your subtle imprints to see things as self-existent.

Obstacles to knowledge and mental afflictions obstacles cause all sickness, suffering, and death. By stopping them, you stop the cause of suffering.

Be happy that you have committed yourself to ultimate compassion. Ultimate compassion involves finding out what really makes people get sick and die, and then stops those things. Take joy that you will be able to identify what it is in people's hearts that makes them get sick and die, and that you'll learn to stop these things.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Class Seven: Mental Afflictions and Wrong World Views

NYON MONG Mental afflictions, bad thoughts, thoughts which harass you;

skt., klesha from "klish," to bother, bug, disturb, distress, harass you

SEM-GYU MASHIWAR JEPAY SEM-JUNG mind stream no peace makes thought

The definition of a mental affliction is, "A thought which ruins your peace of mind." Reaching nirvana is to remove all of your mental afflictions forever.

Mental afflictions hurt you because they make you unhappy. They ruin your day. Their function is to ruin your day. There is no unhappy state of mind which is virtuous, other than regret. Any unhappy state of mind is a non-virtue.

The Top Six Mental Afflictions:

KONG TRO

1. **DU CHAK** Liking things ignorantly (elsewhere called desire or attachment.)

For this to be a mental affliction and therefore a non-virtue, you must like a thing which you see as self-existent in your mind. You like something self-existently and don't want to lose it. To be a mental affliction you must misunderstand the object; this implies that you would do a non-virtue to get an loop the things you like

that you would do a non-virtue to get or keep the things you like.

Disliking things ignorantly (elsewhere called anger or hatred.) It means seeing something in your mind as self-existent and being willing to do non-virtue to avoid it. For example, yelling back at

someone to get them to stop yelling at you.

3. NGA GYEL Pride, literally, "I, the king." Feeling like you're better than others,

based upon real or imagined qualities. Self-confidence or pride which uplifts and motivates you is fine, and is similar to rejoicing in true goodness. But pride where you are very full of yourself and treat others badly, arrogantly, condescending, etc. is an affliction. Pride afflicts our mind. Pride also karmically leads to stupidity and dull mental faculties. You should focus on the impermanence of

your good qualities.

4. MA RIKPA Ignorance. Not clearly understanding things like the laws of karma

(this does not refer to seeing things as self-existent).

5. **TE TSOM Doubt**, lazy doubt. Not analyzing and evaluating things with your mind. You don't accept and fully pursue a teaching or practice because you're too lazy to find out about it, to investigate, and to

pursue it actively. You don't feel like making the effort to clarify things because then you'll have to act.

6. **TAWA Wrong view**. There are five primary wrong world views which are big time mental afflictions:

Five Wrong World Views:

1. **JIKTA**Perishable view. This focuses upon something which will be destroyed. It focuses upon "me" or "my things", and think that these things are self-existent. "Me" means my body, self, arms, legs, etc. "Mine" means my house, clothes, etc. You do all your non-virtues because of this; it's the source of all the mental afflictions.

2. **TARTA**Extreme view. Holding that things are either non-existent, or that they never change. Having extreme views that things exist in the way that they appear to exist, or that nothing exists at all.

3. **LOKTA Wrong views**. Actively believing that there's no such thing as karma and future lives. Actively means having decided and firmly holding the conclusion.

4. **TAWA CHOK DZIN** Having the attitude that **your wrong views are best**, world views best believe that they are superior. Rejoicing in your own ignorance.

5. TSULTRIM DANG TULSHUK CHOKDZIN GYI TAWA morality and asceticism believe they're the best

To believe that mistaken spiritual hardships and morality are the best; including spiritual practices like starving yourself, causing yourself pain, beating yourself and the like. It's no help spiritually to intentionally hurt yourself, to damage your body or mind.

Master Shantideva's Battle Cry:

These six primary mental afflictions are the scourge of humanity, and are your enemy. They are your mortal enemy and cause you great suffering. This enemy has ruined you for all time. Make war on this enemy and annihilate it. Recognize, seek, and destroy them, literally; don't tolerate them for even an instant in your mind. Cancer and aging are caused by the mental afflictions that created this suffering body. Stress, bad habits, every nasty thing in our lives come from them. So make war against them and don't stop until the job is completely finished. The main weapon is to understand the emptiness of the object, to know where it's coming from. Another tactic is to study karma and understand what mental afflictions will do to our future, and then to intelligently smash them. If you realize the severity of this problem, you will pay the price and do anything it takes. **Ultimately, understanding emptiness is the only way to stop mental afflictions.**

14. **LE LO**

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Eight: Secondary Mental Afflictions; The Six Perfections

20 Secondary Mental Afflictions:

20 Secondary W	tentui minetions.
NYE NYUN	Secondary Mental Afflictions . These follow after and along with the six primary mental afflictions.
1. TROWA	Anger . It stems from ignorantly not liking things, and is a prelude to hurting someone. It's the first few minutes of anger.
2. KUN DZIN	Retaining Anger over a longer period of time, after the initial anger.
3. TSIKPA	Irritation. Starting to get annoyed; pre-anger which leads up to anger.
4. NAM-TSE	Malice . Being willing (deciding in your mind) to hurt someone either verbally or physically.
5. TRAK DOK	Jealousy . Because of your desire for gain or admiration, you're unwilling to let others have good things. This is a form of anger. Jealousy is common and very dangerous in dharma centers.
6. GYU	Insincerity , denial, falsity. You won't admit your faults or shortcomings, and so can't receive knowledge because you feel you know it all.
7. YO-WA	Pretense . Pretending you have qualities which you don't have so that others will honor you.
8. NGO-TSA MEPA	A Shamelessness. Not having a conscience which keeps you from doing non-virtue when no one is looking.
9. TREL ME	Inconsideration . Not caring what anyone thinks or feels when you do something, not avoiding a bad deed which will cause other to lose faith.
10. CHAP-PA	Hiding your faults . The longer you hide a fault the more the karma grows.
11. SER-NA	Stingy, cheap, not generous, don't want to give anything.
12. GYAK PA	Conceited , puffed up, focusing on your own temporary good qualities (like being rich or beautiful) and being stuck up about them.
13. MA DE PA	Lack of faith . Feeling lazy and having a lack of admiration toward holy beings who deserve our devotion.

Laziness. Spiritual laziness, a lack of joy in doing goodness. Lying around

your home on the weekend instead of going out doing good deeds.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Eight, continued

15. **BAK MEPA** Carelessness. Not being careful with your spiritual life; being careless and

thereby doing non-virtue.

16. **JE NGE Forgetfulness**, losing focus. Not remembering your commitment to ethical

behavior throughout your daily activities.

17. SHE-SHIN MAYINPA Losing watchfulness, not being aware. Not watching

yourself to catch your non-virtuous behavior. Losing the mental watchdog, your vigilance against non-virtues.

18. **MUKPA Dullness** of body or mind, torpor, fogginess, like when you eat too much

or don't sleep enough. This will lead to other mental afflictions.

19. NAM-YENG Distraction towards a pleasant object; it comes from wanting things

ignorantly.

20. **GUPA** Scattering. Not being able to stay focused on one thing; distractedly going

from one thing to another.

Where afflictions abide:

Is it possible to totally destroy the mental afflictions? The afflictions all come from ignorance—seeing things as self-existent—and they can be removed from our mind stream when we reach nirvana. Once we remove them from our mind, could they possibly hide out somewhere else, then re-infect the mind? There are three possible places where mental afflictions can reside: in your mind, in the outer objects we perceive, and in the senses doing the perceiving.

1. SUK SOK YUL LA MI-NE In the outer world. If mental afflictions resided in

the outer world, then everyone would be infected by them, including arhats (who have eliminated mental afflictions permanently). So afflictions can't be based

in outer objects.

2. MIK SOK WANGPO LA MI-NE In our sense powers. Anyone perceiving emptiness

has their sense powers, but not a mental affliction, so

the afflictions can't reside in the senses.

3. BAR LA MI-NE There's no place else for them to go. If they're not in

the outer world, or in your mind, or in the sense powers linking the mind and the outer world, then there's no place else for them to exist and they have been completely eliminated, with no basis to ever return and arise again. Once they are eliminated

from your mind, they're gone forever.

CLASS NOTES Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Class Eight, continued

The Six Perfections: These are the six general activities of a bodhisattva. If you do these things, your world will change.

PAROL TU CHINPA skt., param-ita other side to went PAROL TU CHIN JE other side to take you

"Went to the other side," to perfection. These six activities are called perfections because:

- 1. When you reach Buddhahood they can be done perfectly.
- 2. They will bring you to perfection, to Buddhahood.

1. **JINPA Giving**. Material objects, dharma, or protection.

2. TSULTRIM An ethical way of life. Keeping your vows, from avoiding the ten

non-virtues up to tantric vows.

3. **SUPA Not getting angry** when the time is ripe.

4. **TSUN DRU Joyful effort**. Enjoying doing good things.

5. **SAMTEN** Meditation, concentration.

6. **SHERAB Wisdom**. Understanding emptiness.

These are the activities which can give you the karmic energy to become enlightened in this life. You must spend your life doing these things. "Perfection" means that you have perfected the state of mind which wants to do, and does these things. You want to give everything you have to help others, for example. Perfecting giving doesn't mean that everyone has everything they want. It means that you are willing to give because you enjoy giving, regardless of the outcome; regardless of whether or not anything seems to improve from what you gave. You have perfected your *attitude* of giving.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Class Nine: Recollection, Watchfulness, and Freezing

DRENPA SHESHIN Recollection and Watchfulness. You must have these two recollection watchfulness states of mind in order to think and act like a bodhisattva.

Recollection:

Recollection is holding a virtuous object in your mind and not losing it. This refers to recollecting several specific things. Recollect your ultimate goal to become fully enlightened, recollect your virtuous practice for the day, and recollect the three close recollections:

The three close recollections:

- 1. **First Close Recollections: Buddha Jewel**. Walk around thinking, "I'm going for the ultimate goal, and I want to have omniscience, a body in paradise, and the ability to emanate countless bodies everywhere to help all beings." Also remember the Buddha's emptiness and your emptiness; this emptiness functions to allow you to become a Buddha. *This last point is the essence of the Buddha jewel, and is very important*.
- 2. **Second Close Recollection: Dharma Jewel**. The most important aspect of it is the direct perception of emptiness. As you walk down the street recollect the quality of seeing emptiness directly.
- 3. **Third Close Recollection: Sangha Jewel**. Those beings who have seen emptiness directly. As you walk around, think of those who have seen emptiness.

So, as you walk down the street, recollect your final ultimate goal (enlightenment), recollect the emptiness of a Buddha, the direct perception of emptiness, and those people who have seen emptiness directly. This is the ultimate recollection, thinking about various aspects of emptiness.

There is also another kind of recollection. With this kind of recollection you choose your virtuous activity for the day (for example, giving), and you keep it in the back of our mind and recollect it all day long. You should pick one thing and keep it in your mind as a practice until you get good at it.

Watchfulness:

Watchfulness is the mental alarm. When you lose your recollection of giving or emptiness, etc., the watchfulness in the back of your mind sounds the alarm that you've lost the object of recollection and concentration. Watchfulness watches your thoughts, speech, and actions.

CLASS NOTES Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Class Nine, continued

Master Shantideva states that if there is too much sensory stimulation, it's not possible to keep your recollection and watchfulness. There are methods to keep your mindfulness and to help tune out distraction and regulate your sense stimulation. One practice is dropping your eyes:

- keep your eyes down, look at the ground.
- look up to refresh your mind if you get bored, don't get distracted.
- if you meet someone you know, look at them and greet them normally, don't be weird or unfriendly, then go on your way.
- when you look up to refresh yourself, check for cars, telephone poles, etc. and be careful not to physically endanger yourself by looking down.

The Order of the Six Perfections:

As you go through the six perfections each perfection is more serious and important than the prior one. Wisdom is the highest perfection and giving is the lowest. The bodhisattva levels (bhumis) are ordered according to the increasing sophistication of the six perfections. Level two is more important and difficult than level one. On the first bodhisattva level you have already seen emptiness directly with bodhichitta in your heart. Even though you have all six perfections on the first bodhisattva level, you are concentrating on perfecting giving. You get very, very powerful at the practice of giving. On the second level you are still practicing all six perfections, but you get really good at living an ethical way of life.

When you are practicing the six perfections, concentrate on number one (giving) and get good at it. Then focus sequentially on getting good at numbers two, three, etc. Generally accomplish the perfections one at a time in the proper order. First get good at number one, then focus on number two, then focus on number three, etc.

The reason that one perfection leads to the next is as follows: when giving, not being concerned with possessions, and not being attached to things are important attitudes to have. These attitudes leads naturally to an ethical way of life—if you're not too attached to material objects and worried about keeping them, then it's much easier to keep your morality. You're not going to harm others, lie, etc. for those objects. An ethical way of life includes restraining yourself from negative actions, which leads naturally to the next perfection of not getting angry. Learning to restrain yourself, and to fight and struggle with your negativity is hard, and sets the stage to be happy when you do good things (perfection number four). If you have joyous effort, you will be doing good things non-stop day and night. You will focus on doing only that. The activity of concentrating your life single-pointedly on one thing leads naturally to concentrating during meditation. You must be in deep meditation to see emptiness directly, which is the ultimate form of perfection number six.

CLASS NOTES Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Class Nine, continued

Situations in which you should "freeze":

SHING SHINDU MEPA Stay like a piece of wood, freeze. This is mindfulness. When you wood like stay catch yourself in a misdeed, just stop mid-stream. Basically, when any primary or secondary mental affliction arises, catch yourself and stop it. Master Shantideva gives some examples of situations in which bad habits and bad deeds are likely to occur:

1. **CHAKPA Liking something ignorantly.** Ignorantly means you misunderstand its nature, and wanting it would make you do something unethical to get it.

2. **TROWA** Disliking things ignorantly. Disliking something to the point you would do something non-virtuous to avoid it.

3. **NGA GYEL Pride**, literally, "I king"

4. **GYAKPA Conceit**, when you feel superior to others.

5. TSANG DRUWA Criticizing, when you want to publicize others' faults or mistakes.

6. **YO-GYU** Deceiving others, when you want to put on a facade or hide your bad qualities.

7. DAK-TU Praising yourself.

8. SHEN MU Putting down others.

9. **SHEWA Scolding**, yelling at someone.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I Class Ten: The Perfections of Giving and Ethical Living

The six perfections are activities to undertake once you've decided to become enlightened for the sake of all beings. This class covers the first two perfections: giving and living an ethical life.

The Perfection of Giving:

I. JIMPAY	PARCHIN	The Perfection of Giving.	There are	three c	ategories o	of giving:
giving	perfection					

- 1. **SANG SING GI JINPA Giving material things** like food, clothes, shelter, etc. material things of giving
- 2. **MIN JIKPA JINPA** Giving protection from fear. Protecting others from harm, thieves, muggers, etc.
- 3. **CHU KYI JINPA Giving the Dharma**. This is the highest form of giving. It's trying to lead people to having realizations in their hearts.

Things that make a karmic result more powerful: (giving is the example used)

- 1. **GYUN DU JAWA**in a stream giving

 Doing it in a stream. Give over and over again, continually.
- 2. **DUNPA DRAKPO**motivation fierce

 Doing it with very strong feelings, like intense caring, compassion, etc. Have a strong intention to lead someone to enlightenment when you give them something.
- 3. MI TUN CHOK

 Doing it as an antidote for the three poisons in your mind. For example, give away stuff toward which you feel attachment, or give praise to someone you're jealous of.
- 4. **YUNTEN GYI SHING** Give to a powerful object. Your Lama and the Three good quality of powerful object Jewels are examples of powerful karmic objects.
- 5. PEN DOKPAY SHING helper to do special object parents who gave you a human body and mind with which you can reach ultimate paradise. Acknowledge this benefit.
- 6. **DUNGEL CHEN GYI SHING**suffering someone of powerful object

 Give to someone who is suffering, in trouble, tired, stressed, someone who badly needs your help.

 Anyone in real, dire need is a powerful karmic object.

CLASS NOTES
Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I
Class Ten, continued

Prioritizing the Perfections:

JAWA NYI DOM action two converge

When there are two options, which one do you choose? Should you give to person number one or person number two? You need to prioritize your choices. You must do the higher perfection rather than the lower one when you can only do one or the other. For example, you should meditate rather than give, in a situation where both activities can't be done. The higher perfections ultimately are of greater benefit to us and to others.

Also, when practicing a single perfection, focus it toward a higher object rather than a less powerful karmic object. For example, give to the Three Jewels rather than to a person who doesn't need your gift and is not karmically powerful, if the choice must be made. **Prioritize to do the highest perfection to the most powerful karmic object to get to enlightenment the fastest.**

The Perfection of Living an Ethical Way of Life:

TSULTRIM GYI PARCHIN The Perfection of Living an Ethical Way of Life.
morality of perfection

There are three kinds of ethical behavior:

- 1. Keeping your vows.
- 2. Undertaking behavior which collects good energy.
- 3. Behavior aimed at liberating yourself and other beings. Master Shantideva concentrates on this third type of ethical behavior, which itself has three parts:
 - 1. **SHENDUN HLURLANG Totally go for it**, do everything you possibly can to serve for others' benefit go for it others.
 - 2. SHEN DUWAY LAPPA others gather train

Attract and entice others to practice Dharma. Make it affordable and easy to access. Don't proselytize or preach, but if they're somewhat interested lure them sweetly with either material things or through offering the dharma in a way that will attract them:

How to attract people to Dharma:

- A. <u>Use material things</u>:
 - a. **SEGU JIN MIJIN** Share your resources (food, clothes) appropriately. If it will help to attract them, give things away, but don't break any of your vows to do so.

Course X: Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life, Part I

Class Ten, continued

b. LU	LA	MI	NU
body	to	don'	t hurt

Don't hurt your body. Take care of your health and basic comforts, and your family's basic needs. Don't prematurely hurt yourself for minor goals before you're able.

c. **LU JIN DUGU** body giving time, purpose

When the time comes and you're ready, give up your body and your life. "Ready" means that you would have no regrets in the intermediate state after death.

B. Attracting others to Dharma by how you give the Dharma:

a.	NYENPOY	KUNCHU
	the student	the behavior

If the student doesn't behave well (with respect for the teacher and the Dharma) then don't teach them.

b. **NU KYI SAMPA** vessel of level

The level the student is on. Judge their level and teach at their level, not above or below it.

c. **GYACHEN MULA MEN MIJAR**vast attracted lower don't capacity to teachings put

If you find a student with great potential, don't teach them lower paths. Teach them the highest possible level.

3. **SEM JESU DZINPA** mind keep others' faith

Keep others' faith. Behave in a way that sets a good example for others and inspires their faith and admiration for Dharma. Represent bodhisattvahood well.

Three kinds of behavior to attract people:

A. MA DEPA PANG losing faith prevent

Prevent others from losing faith. Your activities as a bodhisattva should prevent other people from losing their faith in Buddhism because of the way you're acting.

B. **LAM TUN PA** the path showing

Have good manners when you give directions and interact with others. Have a generally pleasing manner; be polite and sensitive to others' needs. Be considerate and thoughtful.

C. NYELWAY KUNCHU going to sleep proper behavior

Go to sleep properly, in a nice way. Lie on your right side as you fall asleep. Think of some very virtuous object as you fall asleep. Think that you're going to sleep in order to wake up rested, so that you can do great virtue.



COURSE X
Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life,
Part I

Answer Key, Class One

1) Name the root text we will be using in our study of the bodhisattva's way of life, its author, and his approximate dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan)

Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life by Master Shantideva, from about 700 AD

jangchub sempay chupa la jukpa

loppun shiwa hla

2) Name the famed commentary upon this text that we will be using; give the author's two names, and his exact dates. (Tibetan track in Tibetan)

Entry Point for the Children of the Victorious Buddhas by Gyaltsab Je, Darma Rinchen, 1364-1432

gyalse juk-ngok

gyaltsab je darma rinchen

3) Describe briefly the event in Master Shantideva's life which taught the monks of Nalandra Monastery that they should never judge a person from his or her outward appearance. (Tibetan track also give in Tibetan the name which was given to this master by certain misguided people.)

Because he chose not to reveal his extraordinary spiritual qualities outwardly, Master Shantideva was given the derogatory name "Mister Three Thoughts," implying that he was only interested in eating, sleeping, and defecating. In an attempt to induce him to leave the monastery, certain other monks attempted to embarrass him by asking him to teach publicly. He then recited the *Guide*, displayed miraculous powers, and disappeared into the sky. Later the monks located him, and he granted them explanations of two of his greatest works.



dushe sumpawa

- 4) Name the ten chapters of the Guide. (Tibetan track in Tibetan)
 - (1) Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment

jangchub kyi sem kyi pen-yun

(2) Purifying Bad Deeds

dikpa shakpa

(3) Acquiring the Wish for Enlightenment

jangchub kyi sem sungwa

- (4) Using Carefulness 디지'অ독'지털로'되 bak-yu tenpa
- (5) Guarding Awareness বিষ্ণানন্ত্রীর নমুদ্রান্ত্র sheshin sungwa
- (7) Joyous Effort ঘট্টব্'ব্যুঝ'ঘশ্বর'্থা tsundru tenpa
- (8) Meditative Concentration 디지자'지F국'디탈국'디 samten tenpa
- (9) Wisdom 역자'조디'ற '대국' sherab kyi leu
- (10) Dedication
 বাই বিশ্ব বিশ্ব



Answer Key, Class Two

1) Give the definition of the wish for enlightenment (bodhichitta) according to Lord Maitreya. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The definition of the wish for enlightenment is the wish to achieve total enlightenment in order to help all living beings.

semkyepa ni shendun chir yangdak dzokpay jangchub du

- 2) Name and describe the two forms of the wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
 - a) The wish in the form of a prayer. Like planning to go on a trip; a decision to commit to reaching total enlightenment for the sake of others.



munsem

b) The wish in the form of action. Like actually taking the trip; taking the bodhisattva vows and keeping them, engaging in the six perfections.



juksem

- 3) Describe first five metaphors used to describe the benefits of the wish for enlightenment.
 - a) The wish is like an alchemical elixir which can change the inferior body we have now into the supreme body of a Buddha.
 - b) The wish is like a precious jewel which is difficult to find and able to clear away the poverty of living kind.
 - c) The wish is like an evergreen tree which doesn't die after bearing fruit a single time, but rather continually grows and gives more fruits.
 - d) The wish is like a great warrior who is able to protect one from great fear, and danger.
 - e) The wish is like the fire which comes at the end of an eon: it is able to burn away all your bad deeds without any difficulty at all.
- 4) The sutra called *Stalks in Array* says this holy wish is like a seed, a rich field, a wishgiving vase, and sword. Explain each of these metaphors.
 - a) The wish is like a seed because from it grow each and every quality of an enlightened being.
 - b) The wish is like a rich field of soil because it makes all the good qualities of living beings grow and increase.
 - c) The wish is like a wish-granting vase because it can fulfill your every wish.
 - d) The wish is like a spear because you can use it to defeat the enemy of anything related to the mental afflictions.
- 5) Explain how the wish for enlightenment destroys your bad deeds, and prevents you from being born in one of the lower realms?

Because one wishes to become a Buddha to help all living beings one keeps one's vows carefully, and uses the four forces to eliminate the power of previous past deeds.

6) Explain why nothing less then this precious wish could ever transform your entire world and your very being into something totally pure and enlightened.

Because the wish for enlightenment involves a decision to reach enlightenment for oneself in order to help an unlimited number of other beings, the highest state of being that anyone can achieve, it creates the karma for one's entire future world to be totally pure.



Answer Key, Class Three

1) Give the four general divisions of the second chapter of the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life.* (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

a) Offering

chupa

b) Prostration

chaktselwa

c) Going for refuge

kyabsu drowa

d) Purifying oneself of bad deeds

dikpa shakpa

2) Name and describe the highest objects of the practice of making offerings.

The three highest objects are the Buddha Jewel (which refers primarily to the Dharma body, or the emptiness of the bodies of the Buddha); the Dharma Jewel (which refers primarily to the direct perception of emptiness, and the permanent cessation of spiritual obstacles); and the Sangha Jewel (which refers to those who have perceived emptiness directly).

- 3) List the three general types of offering described in the *Guide*. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The offering of things which have no owner

dakpu masungway dze kyi chupa

b) The offering of one's own body

rang gi lu ulwa

c) The offering of things which you emanate with your own thoughts

- 4) List the twelve kinds of offerings that you can make by emanating them in your mind. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Offering of bathing



b) Offering of fine clothing

nabsa

c) Offering of ornaments



gyen

d) Offering of ointments

jukpa

e) Offering of flowers



metok

f) Offering of incense



pи

g) Offering of fine food

shelse

h) Offering of light

nangsel

i) Offering of mansions

j) Offering of parasols

h) Offering of music

rulmo

i) Blessing offerings, so that they can continue in an unbroken stream

chupay nampa gyun michepar jin-gyi lappa

5) Describe briefly why the act of taking refuge can actually protect you.

By taking refuge in the Three Jewels we are actually re-asserting our belief in the perception of emptiness. This protects us when we are able to stop reacting badly to negative events and people, because we realize that these reactions will create karmic imprints that force us to undergo sufferings once again in the future.



Answer Key, Class Four

1) Give the name of the original source of the teaching on the four forces of purification. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The teaching on the four forces of purification derives originally from the Sutra on the Four Practices

chu shi tenpay do

- 2) List the four forces in the order in which they are presented in the detailed treatment of the forces in Gyaltsab Je's commentary upon the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life*. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The force of destruction

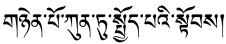
nampar sunjinpay top

b) The force of the foundation



ten gyi top

c) The force of applying an antidote



nyenpo kuntu chupay top

d) The force of restraining from the bad deed

nyepa le larndokpay top

3) Is the practice of the four forces effective even with bad deeds where the karma has been both committed and collected, making the experience of the result of the deeds certain?

Yes; the energy of even these types of bad karma can be removed by the four forces, so needless to say other types of bad karma can be removed.

4) Name the method we can use to achieve the level of regret required for the first of the four forces.

We must think about the way in which negative actions trigger three different types of karmic results.

- 5) Name six different kinds of practices that can be effective in the practice of the third of the forces. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Studying the profound scriptures of the canon

dode sabmo la tenpa

b) Meditating on emptiness

tongpa-nyi gompa

c) Reciting secret words

depa la tenpa

d) Preparing physical representations of the holy bodies of enlightened beings

kusuk la tenpa

e) Making offerings

chupa la tenpa

f) Reciting the names of high beings

tsen la tenpa

- 6) Describe the four steps used by Master Shantideva in his explanation of the first of the four forces.
 - a) An explanation of the process of developing regret which is attained through considering the way in which a negative deed has been committed.
 - b) The practice of developing regret out of fear that one might die while still possessing the karma of negative deeds.
 - c) The practice of developing regret by considering especially how you have committed negative deeds which are meaningless.
 - d) The practice of learning to fear negative actions.
- 7) Name the three steps in the explanation of the force of the foundation.
 - a) Instructions on seeking refuge in the Three Jewels from this very moment.
 - b) Seeking help from the sons and daughters of the Victors, those who possess the power of prayers.
 - c) Carrying out their wishes, once you have taken refuge in them.

8) What is the point of the comparison of the terror of death to a kind of punishment in which one of a person's limbs is cut off?

The point is that, if a person's entire appearance is completely transformed by the terror of the expected punishment of having a limb cut off, then the fear of the moment of death is even more unbearable. We are able to observe the former, and it should give us an insight into the inner feelings during the latter process. We should have strong regret now for our past negativities and continuously apply the four fources to pufity our negative karma so that we can avoid the pain and terror of death.



Answer Key, Class Five

1) In his discussion of the third of the four forces of purification, Master Shantideva advises us to think of ourselves as sick people in need of medicine and a supreme physician. Describe the chronic disease that we are said to have. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

We are chronically and constantly sick with the three poisons of ignorantly liking things, ignorantly disliking things, and ignorance itself. It is important to understand the description of liking and disliking. Liking for example is defined in the literature on the perfection of wisdom as "An independent thought wherein one wishes not to lose an impure object which appears to be attractive."

sakche kyi ngupo la yi-ong du nang ne rang top kyi mindrelwar dupay semjung sempa

- 2) Name three important reasons why we should make great efforts in the practice of purifying ourselves through all four of the forces, together. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) We don't understand the laws of actions and their consequences.

lendre kyi namye la mi-kepa

b) We are unable to follow what little we do understand, and constantly collect new and powerful karmic imprints.

chungse she kyang dorlen tsulshin du mi jepa

c) We must remove obstacles to reaching the true wish for enlightenment.

jangsem kyeway gek jongwa la mik ne be gu

- 3) Name five activities that function to help us collect the positive energy needed to reach the true wish for enlightenment. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Rejoicing in goodness.

gewa la jesu yi-rangwa

b) Urging holy beings to turn the wheel of the Dharma.

chu kyi korlo korwar kulwa

c) Requesting holy beings not to pass into "nirvana."

nya-ngen le mindawar solwa dappa

d) Dedicating our good deeds.

gewa ngowa

e) Surrender, through practicing the state of mind where you want to give up your body, your possessions, and the power of your good deeds.

lu longchu ge-tsa tongway sempa jangwa

4) Name three different levels of virtue in which we can rejoice.

Virtuous deeds by ourselves and others that are going to lead to the higher births, to nirvana alone, and to highest enlightenment.

5) Name and describe the opposite of rejoicing.

Jealousy, which is a kind of anger or unhappiness that someone else has attained some happiness or good personal quality. Jealousy is extremely improper for bodhisattvas, who are working so that every living being can have every kind of happiness.

- 6) Name four kinds of dedication, and then describe what it is we are dedicating.
 - a) General dedication

b) Dedication for the sake of the sick

c) Dedication for the sake of removing hunger and thirst

trekom selway dundu ngowa

d) Dedication so that all that everyone's wishes for can come about



What we are dedicating: The virtuous power of all the deeds we have done, from offering up to requesting holy beings not to enter into "nirvana."

7) What are we wishing for when we make dedication?

We are wishing that we ourselves could become enlightened through our virtue, so that we ourselves could become the medicine, cure, and physician for the sick; become food and drink for the needy; become the very things and people that all beings wish for, in a temporary and an ultimate sense.



Answer Key, Class Six

1) Why does Master Shantideva recommend the practice of taking joy, once one has attained the two forms of the wish for enlightenment?

This is a way of preventing the wish from being lost, and of causing it to increase ever further.

- 2) Describe four things that uplift our hearts as we first gain the two forms of the wish. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Our lives have become fruitful

b) We have truly achieved a human life

c) We have been born into the family of the Buddhas

d) We have become a child of the Buddhas



- 3) Name five ways in which the wish has the power to remove the sufferings of living beings. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) It destroys the Lord of Death within every living being.

droway chidak jompa

b) It destroys poverty (within every living being, same with all the rest).

ulwa jompa

c) It destroys illness.

ne jompa

d) It destroys the general suffering of the cycle of life.

chir sipay dukngel jompa

e) It destroys, more specifically, the sufferings of the lower realms.

kyepar ngendroy dukngel jompa

4) How is it that the wish can remove these sufferings in every living being?

A person who has the wish can reach full enlightenment, and once enlightened they are perfectly qualified to teach and help all other sentient beings remove all of their suffering, and thereby to reach their own perfection.

- 5) Name and describe the two kinds of obstacles that the wish has the power to destroy. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
 - a) Obstacles which are related directly to mental afflictions: the obstacles to the achievement of nirvana



b) Obstacles which block one from the state of total knowledge: obstacles to the attainment of Buddhahood



6) What, according to Gyaltsab Je, is the "very highest way of all to get the essence out of having achieved this human body and mind"?

The process of undertaking all the necessary preliminaries—purifying ourselves of obstacles that work against getting the wish, and gathering together all the factors that are conducive to reaching it; and then actually reaching the wish itself.



Answer Key, Class Seven

- 1) Name four different steps in the process of considering how the mental afflictions hurt us.
 - a) Considering how they leave us powerless.
 - b) Considering how they send us to unthinkable suffering.
 - c) Considering how the time that they hurt us is infinite.
 - d) Considering the reasons why it is wrong to make friends with the mental afflictions.
- 2) Give the standard definition of a mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

A mental function which is of the type that works to ruin the peace of the mind with which it is associated.

rang dang tsungden gyi semgyu ma-shiwar jepay rikne kyi semjung

- 3) Name the six primary mental afflictions. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Liking things ignorantly



duchak

b) Disliking things ignorantly

kongtro

c) Pride

nga-gyel

d) Ignorance

marikpa

e) Doubt

te-tsom

f) Wrong views

tawa

- 4) Name and describe briefly the five kinds of wrong views that make up the sixth primary mental affliction. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Perishable view. Focuses on the parts of a person and holds the person to be self-existent.

jikta

b) Extreme view. Focuses on the person upon which perishable view is focusing, and holds this person to be either unchanging or non-existent.

tarta

c) Wrong view. Belief that actions and their consequences, or past and future lives, and the like do not exist.



lokta

d) The view of holding one's wrong views as highest. Believes that all wrong views other than this one itself are inferior to have.

chokdzin gyi tawa

e) View that mistaken morality and asceticisms are highest. Belief that spiritual practices which hurt oneself etc are the best ones to do.

tsultrim dang tulshuk chokdzin gyi tawa

5) What does Master Shantideva say about the idea that one should hold off achieving nirvana until others do so first?

Since nirvana is defined as the permanent destruction of the mental afflictions, it would be a silly thought to hold onto your mental afflictions until others got rid of theirs first. You would also be unable to lead others to destroy their mental afflictions if you had not yet destroyed your own.



Answer Key, Class Eight

- 1) There are twenty secondary mental afflictions. Name and describe any six of them. (Tibetan track name in Tibetan and describe in English.)
 - (1) Anger—This stems from disliking and causes you to prepare to harm someone by threatening and so forth.



trowa

(2) Retaining anger —This is a part of disliking. It is the continued maintenance of a harmful thought over a long period of time, and causes intolerance.



kundzin

(3) Irritation—This is an impatience which derives from anger and irritation and causes you to speak harsh words.



tsikpa

(4) Malice—This is a kind of disliking whose activity is uncompassionate harmfulness. It is the state of mind which is ready to hurt someone.

इस्रायर वर्के या

nampar tsewa

(5) Jealousy—This is a part of anger. It is the inner disturbance of the mind which out of a desire for gain and honor cannot bear the sight of other's happiness. It is a mental discomfort, it disturbs the mind, and supports wrongdoing.



(6) Denial—This is the crooked state of mind which out of attachment to gain and honor hides its faults and thus conceals them continuously. It obstructs you from receiving true instruction.



(7) Pretence—This is pretending to have qualities that you do not actually possess for the sake of gain and honor. It is a devious misleading of others, reinforces the other mental afflictions, and supports the practice of wrong livelihood.



(8) Lack of shame—This is not avoiding bad deeds for reasons which relate to yourself.



ngo-tsa mepa

(9) Lack of consideration—This is engaging in bad deeds for reasons which related to others.



trel mepa

(10) Concealing one's faults —This is failing to follow good urgings, and wishing to conceal your faults. It is the cause of regret and prevents your knowledge from staying.

LAD1.71

chappa

(11) Stinginess—This comes from liking and wants the things which other's have. It acts to prevent your wealth from increasing.



serna

(12) Conceitedness—This is the haughty state of mind in which you rejoice and become attached to your own impure qualities such as your good health, your intelligence, or your youth.

ক্রুবার্ম:খা

gyakpa

(13) Lack of faith—This is a kind of ignorance. It is a lack of spiritual admiration for the objects of correct faith and for good deeds. It functions to support laziness.

य-५५-४।

madepa

(14) Laziness—This is a fondness for the pleasant feeling of such activities as sleeping and lounging around. It is a lack of enthusiasm for doing good deeds, and the opposite of joyful effort.



lelo

(15) Carelessness—This affects your practice of doing good deeds and avoiding bad deeds. It is the opposite of mindfulness. It functions to increase non-virtue and to decrease virtue.

bak mepa

(16) Forgetfulness of goodness—This is the obscuration and forgetting of a virtuous object. It is the opposite of recollection, supports mental agitation, and is a support for the mental afflictions.

je-nge

(17) Lack of awareness—This is heedless and careless activity which you do with your thoughts, your words, and your deeds, and is a support for breaking your vows.

sheshin mayinpa

(18) Dullness—This is a heaviness of the body and mind which renders you incapable of penetrating the object of your attention. It is the inward contraction and incompetence of the mind, and a support for the mental afflictions.

mukpa

(19) Distraction—This is the following of a pleasant object which presents itself to your mind. It is included as a part of desire. Because it is the escape of the mind toward an object it is an obstacle to mental quiescence.

nam-yeng

(20) Scattering—This is the mind moving and straying toward objects instead of abiding one-pointedly on a virtuous object.



2) What does Gyaltsab Je have to say about the idea that a strong love for the Path, and hatred for your mental afflictions, are mental afflictions themselves?

He says that, because they are elements of the Path itself, the Path which helps you destroy the mental afflictions, they cannot be considered a part of the group of objects which must be eliminated from the mind. He further says that those commentaries which explain that these two attitudes must be eliminated later are only referring to the fact that, once the mental afflictions have been eliminated, these two will no longer function in the fight against the mental afflictions.

3) Why is it important that the continued existence of the mental afflictions depends on a misperception?

Because the mental afflictions are rooted in a misperception, they can be eradicated completely, as the misperception is corrected by the eye of wisdom; and then they will never be able to return.

- 4) State three reasons why the mental afflictions have no place else to go, once they are eliminated from the mind. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) The mental afflictions are not a natural part of the various objects of perception, for if they were, then even enemy destroyers would have to get mental afflictions when they look at visual forms, etc.

nyonmongpa nam ni suk lasokpay yul na rangshin gyi mi-ne

b) The mental afflictions are not a natural part of our sense powers, the eye and the rest, because it is impossible for a person who is focussing on emptiness to have a mental affliction, even though they can at that moment have sense powers such as the eye.

mikla lasokpay wangpoy tsok la yang rangshin gyi mi ne

c) The mental afflictions do not exist by nature anywhere in between these other two possibilities.

de dak gi bar na-ang mi-ne

5) List the six perfections, the six principal activities of a bodhisattva, and explain why they are perfections. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

The six perfections are giving, an ethical way of life, not getting angry, joyful effort, concentration, and wisdom. They are called perfections because, in the mind of an enlightened being, they have been perfected. They are also called perfections if they occur in the mind of a being who has committed himself or herself to the wish for enlightenment, because they function to bring one to perfection.



6) Does the perfection of giving depend on its external perfection? Why or why not?

It does not depend on its external perfection, because we can see that there are still people in the world who are afflicted by poverty. If removing all beings' poverty were the essence of the perfection of giving, then the enlightened beings of the past can not have perfected giving. Therefore the *perfection* of giving is the perfection of the willingness to give (which is also expressed to the ultimate of one's current ability).

- 7) Name the external objects which need not be eliminated for each of the first three perfections to be perfect.
 - a) Needy individuals.
 - b) Beings who are being hurt.
 - c) Irritating individuals.



Answer Key, Class Nine

1) Describe the context in which Master Shantideva distinguishes between recollection and watchfulness. (Tibetan track also give the names for these two in Tibetan.)

Master Shantideva joins his palms at his breast and entreats us with the following words: "Those who wish to protect their minds should do whatever they can to maintain—even at the cost of their lives—their recollection, which functions to prevent you from forgetting a particular virtuous object of the mind, and their watchfulness, which examines what is happening with the three doors of expression at any given time."

- 2) Give the four divisions of the section devoted to how one should maintain how they look with their eyes. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) General advice on how you look with your eyes.

mik gi taway kunchu chir tenpa

b) What to do with your eyes when you are tired.

duppay tse jitar jawa

c) What to do when you find yourself in the presence of another person.

gangsak shen drung du ongpa la jitar jawa

d) What to do when you have finished resting yourself.

दवाः प्रश्रेषाः प्रवे : कें : हे : खूर : तु : पा

ngel supay tse jitar jawa

3) Name three special circumstances under which one may be allowed to let up, temporarily, from the normally very detailed scrutiny of one's thoughts and bodily actions.

Master Shantideva mentions the following circumstances: when one's life is threatened; when one is engaged in a celebration of offering to the Three Jewels; and when it is of some very great benefit to living beings.

4) Explain the reasoning behind the ordering of the six perfections. (Tibetan track mention the six in Tibetan also.)

Not being concerned with possessions, and not having attatchment to them, is necessary for the perfection of giving and leads naturally into the perfection of ethical living. The perfection of an ethical life includes restraining oneself from negative actions, and this leads naturally into the perfection of patience. The perfection of patience involves the ability to bear great hardships for the Dharma, and this leads naturally into the perfection of joyful effort. The perfection of joyful effort involves making constant efforts night and day, which leads into single-pointed meditation. The perfection of meditation involves reaching a point where the body and mind are well-trained for meditation, which leads to the wisdom which realizes perfectly the true nature of all objects.

5) Name six separate occasions on which Master Shantideva says we should freeze, and stay like a bump on a log. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)

Whenever one of the following comes to us (choose any six): liking things ignorantly (chakpa); disliking things ignorantly (trowa); pride (nga-gyel); conceit (gyakpa); the thought to harp on someone else's faults (tsang trupa); deceit (yu gyu); praising oneself (dak tu); criticizing others (shen mu); scolding someone (shewa); arguing (tsupa); desire for fame (nyekur dupa); ignoring others' needs (shendun yelwar dorwa); paying attention only to one's own needs (rang dun bashik dupa); losing patience with hardships related to Dharma (mi supa); lack of joy in doing good (lelo); these are some of the situations mentioned by Master Shantideva.

ক্রমাপ্রামা

chakpa

হ:ক্রুঝা

nga-gyel

सर्यर त्रु न

tsang druwa

यन्याः यर्द्धेन्।

dak tu

यवि:या

shewa

क्रेन्यगुर-वर्नेन्या

nyekur dupa

रटार्ट्रेबायमयः लेमायर्ट्रेन्या

rang dun bashik dupa

वीःवीं

lelo

র্ম্বি'বা

trowa

শ্বীযাপ্য:মা

gyakpa

यार्थे आ yo-gyu

গ্ৰহ:শ্ৰুবা

shen mu

र्सेर'या

tsupa

म्बर-र्देब-स्वाप्तर-वर्देर-मा

shendun yelwar dorwa

श्रे'वर्डेर्'या

misupa



Answer Key, Class Ten

- 1) Name six different qualities mentioned by Master Shantideva that make the perfection of giving very powerful karmically. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Performing a virtuous activity constantly



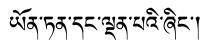
b) Performing it with strong virtuous motivation

dunpa drakpu jawa

c) Performing it with strong corrective thoughts, such as freedom from desire

mitun chok kyi kunne langwa

d) Performing it towards a very virtuous object, such as the Three Jewels



yunten dang denpay shing

e) Performing it towards someone who has helped one

pendokpay shing

f) Performing it towards someone who is suffering greatly, such as those oppressed by great poverty

र्बेचा.चर्जिल.२४.ग्री.बुट.।

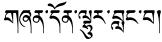
dukngel chen gyi shing

- 2) What two things does Master Shantideva say about prioritizing one's efforts in the six perfections? (Tibetan track: Give the word for "prioritization" in Tibetan.)
 - a) Within one perfection, such as giving, we should perform the more important act of giving if there is a choice between a more and a less important act at any given moment.
 - b) Within the six perfections themselves, we should perform the higher (latter) one if there is a choice between two perfections at any given moment. In Tibetan, this principle is called *jawa nyi dompa*.

तुःचःमाद्रेशःवर्देशशःया

jawa nyi dompa

- 3) State three principles which Master Shantideva discusses with regard to the morality of acting on behalf of living beings. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Throwing oneself into helping others



shendun hlur langwa

b) Training in activities for preventing oneself from being polluted by bad deeds, and attracting others to the Dharma

rang nyepe magupar shen duway chupa la lappa

c) Training in activities that maintain the good opinions of others in the Dharma, and prevent oneself from being polluted by bad deeds

semchen gyi sem jesu sung shing nyepe mi-gupay chupa la lappa

- 4) Name three principles in the practice of attracting other persons to the Dharma through material giving. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) When to give and not to give food and clothing

se gu jinpa dang mi-jinpay kyepar

b) Advice not to hurt the body in order to achieve minor goals

jawa trentsek kyi chedu lu la nupar mijawa

c) Explanation of the proper time and purpose for which to give one's body

lu jinpar tongway du dang gupa shepa

- 5) Name three principles in the practice of attracting other persons through the giving of the Dharma itself. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Students to whom, because of their behavior, it is improper to teach the Dharma

chu shedu mi-rungway nyenpapoy lu kyi kunchu

b) Judging the capacity of the student and teaching what fits them

nu kyi sampay kyepar takpa

c) Being careful not to lead those who are attracted to the widespread teaching (the Mahayana) along a lower path (the Hinayana)

gya chenpo la mupa menpa la jarwar mi jawa

- 6) Name three principles for the practice of training oneself in activities that maintain the good opinions of others in the Dharma, and that prevent oneself from being polluted by bad deeds. (Tibetan track in Tibetan.)
 - a) Avoiding types of behavior that are improper and which would cause others to lose their faith

lu kyi chulam nyepa dang che shing shen ma-depa pangwa

b) How to act when you point out a path, and the like

lam lasokpa tunpay tse jitar jawa

c) The proper method of sleeping

कृत्यःचत्रेःगुम् र्श्वेनःहैं त्यूरः द्युः च

nyelway kunchu jitar jawa



COURSE X
Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life,
Part I

Tibetan Language Study Guide

Class One

jangchub sempay chupa la jukpa

र्श्वेप:द्यंद:वि:प:सू

कुवाse juk-ngok

gyaltsab je darma rinchen

तर् विषायाश्वरायाया dushe sumpawa

नुदःकुतःगुःशेश्रशःगुःषदःधेद। jangchub kyi sem kyi pen-yun

> भूग'य'य'वयश्चारा'य। dikpa shakpa

jangchub kyi sem sungwa

বনা-ঐ্ব-নমুব-মা bak-yu tenpa

विषायहीद यसुद या sheshin sungwa

นอัร นากหุส นา supa tenpa

पर्हेर गुरु पर्हर पा tsundru tenpa

বশ্বস্থান্ত্র বস্থার মা

्रीकारमण्याः sherab kyi leu

ngoway leu

Class Two

स्रम्भात्त्र स्थित्र स

semkyepa ni shendun chir yangdak dzokpay jangchub du

श्चेंद-श्रेसश्

munsem

বৰ্ট্মা.প্রপ্রসা

juksem

Class Three

মর্ক্র্র্

chupa

धुया वर्षवाया

chaktselwa

श्चित्रशःशुःदर्गुःच।

kyabsu drowa

রুবা.ন.বর্বথার.ন।

dikpa shakpa

यर्या.स्रा.भ.चर्चर.यदु.र्स्रा.ग्री.भक्र्र.ता

dakpu masungway dze kyi chupa

रटावी'खुर्यान्युवा'वा

rang gi lu ulwa

र्त्र्रम्यूयायदे सर्हेर्या

lu trulway chupa

<u>a</u>Ni

tru

यःयवदा

nabsa

ক্রবা

gyen

হ্রুবা'ধা

jukpa

মী:দ্ব্য

metok



भक्ट्र.तदु.र्भाताः भीष.षु.रा.प्या.तम्.तम्.त्रीयः मीष्यात्रम्यः त्रा

chupay nampa gyun michepar jin-gyi lappa

Class Four

র্কুম'নত্ত্বি'নমুর'নত্ত্ব'মর্বি' chu shi tenpay do

ampar sunjinpay top

हेत्रः ग्रीः क्षेत्रश् ten gyi top

गानेत में गात है हैं र परे हैं पर्श nyenpo kuntu chupay top

भ्रमायाम् स्रमाय स्रमाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्पाय स्रम्प

अर्रे श्रे वर्ग अं या यहेत्य। dode sabmo la tenpa

र्शूट य है द न क्षेत्र य। tongpa-nyi gompa

पञ्चरायायाम्बर्धाः depa la tenpa

श्चुःगाञ्चणाठाःयः यहेतः यः kusuk la tenpa

र्मात्र प्राचार के प्राचित के प्र

सर्वन या यहेत्य। tsen la tenpa

Class Five

<u>वर्</u>ष्ट्र-प्रवेश्वेस्त्र-प्रवेश्वेस्त्र-प्रवेश्वेस्त्र-प्रवेश्वेस्त्र-प्रवेश्वेस्त्र-प्रवेश

sakche kyi ngupo la yi-ong du nang ne rang top kyi mindrelwar dupay semjung sempa

นม เลฐม ที่ สุม รุธิ ณ มี ม เมโม เมโม lendre kyi namye la mi-kepa

रुट: बद: विषाः गुटः वर्देर व्योदः द्वाः प्रविदः दुः शेः ग्रीदः पा chungse she kyang dorlen tsulshin du mi jepa

नुद्रः रोस्रम् क्षे प्रति योग्रम् क्षेट्रं प्राप्त द्रम् या प्रति प्रति प्रति । jangsem kyeway gek jongwa la mik ne be gu

র্বা'ন'ম'ইম'মু'ঊ'ম্ন'ন।
gewa la jesu yi-rangwa

र्मेश मी प्रतिमाली प्रतिमाली क्षा kulwa

มู รส ณฑ ณิ วรุ ร ราราสุณัญ รา สุรายุ กya-ngen le mindawar solwa dappa

รุญารารฐารา

त्रुमार्येटमार्श्वेर प्रापेर पार्रेर परे सेसमाया श्वर पा

ลู้ chir ngowa

สรานสิงรัสราราชชังธา nepay dundu ngowa

पगोश भ्रें राशिया परि दें द द पर्दे पा trekom selway dundu ngowa

dugu jungway gyuy ngowa

Class Six

वर्षाके वर्षा प्रा daktse drebu yu

भ्रेष्ट्रेत्यायाष्ट्रम् miyi sipa lekpar top

ลรลาสูลาริกุลาลูาลูลา sanggye riksu kye

マスタ・カーション sanggye sesu gyur

तर्मे प्रति तके प्रत्या प्रहें अरुपा droway chidak jompa

> प्रत्यायः वर्षेस्रस्य। ulwa jompa

> > त्र वर्षेस्य प्रा ne jompa

श्रीर'यदे'श्रूया'यश्र्या'यर्हेसस'य। chir sipay dukngel jompa

विर.तर.टर.वर्गुदु.र्सेचा.चर्नता.वर्ह्रभन्नाता

kyepar ngendroy dukngel jompa

त्रेत्रःश्चेत्रा nyundrip

এই Shedrip

Class Seven

rang dang tsungden gyi semgyu ma-shiwar jepay rikne kyi semjung

पर्देर:कण्डा duchak

प्रट.पर्ह्य

kongtro

ट:ক্রুঝা

nga-gyel

ম'ইল্'ঘা

marikpa



te-tsom

स्र.या

tawa

दह्याःसृ

jikta

মঘ্রম'শ্বো

tarta

र्वेजाःस्र

lokta

सक्र्यावह्रम्यीःस्या

chokdzin gyi tawa

क्यानिश्रम्। रटायम्याल्याम्यास्या वहेन ग्री स्रापा

tsultrim dang tulshuk chokdzin gyi tawa

Class Eight

র্ম্র বা

trowa

दर्केषा'य। tsikpa

त्राधरः दर्जे पा nampar tsewa

> ধ্বা-ব্বা trakdok



गुर्भे'ग्रा

ぎあるない。 ngo-tsa mepa

দ্রিঅ'মীস্'ঘ' trel mepa

494.AI

chappa

ই)ম:শ্বু

serna

শ্রীমাপ্রমো

gyakpa

ब्र'55'य।

madepa

वे वें।

lelo

বব্য'ঐ5'থা

bak mepa

TÊT'ÊNI

je-nge

विषायविष्यायीयःया

sheshin mayinpa

भ्रें ने भ्रा त्या में स्था है। यो बीयो शाया भ्रायो शाया है। यो शाया है। यो शाया है। यो बीयो शाया है। यो शाया है।

nyonmongpa nam ni suk lasokpay yul na rangshin gyi mi-ne

भेगा ता भेगाश परे प्राप्त के प्राप्त के प्राप्त के प्राप्त का प्राप्त के प्र

रे'न्या'यो'यर'न्दर'र्घे'यान्रश् de dak gi bar na-ang mi-ne

श्चेत्रःया	র্কুঝ'ব্রিমন্যা	ঘ্রই্র্য়া
jinpa	tsultrim	supa
पर्से ब. य चीका	বঝ্ম'বাদ্রা	.বৃষ্ণ:মবা
tsundru	samten	sherab

धःर्रवः हुः धुवः घ। धःर्रवः हुः धुवः चुर।

parul tu chinje

Class Nine

भैजा जीश जञ्च प्रते गाँउ हीं र ही र जहार पा mik gi taway kunchu chir tenpa

> รุสามสิ ซิ E ซุม สูาสุ duppay tse jitar jawa

याट. नया. याल्य. दुट. दु. त्रेट्रायाया है स्ट्रेट. यु. या

प्रतायक्षेत्रायदे के हे सूर गुःग।

ngel supay tse jitar jawa

यद्याः यर्द्धेद्।

dak tu

ন্যান্ত্ৰৰ:শ্ৰুহা

shen mu

ম্বিনা

shewa

₹5.21

tsupa

क्रेन्यगुर-वर्नेन्य।

nyekur dupa

म्बर-र्देब-धवानर-वर्देर-मा

shendun yelwar dorwa

रर:र्रेब:वनव:ब्रेमा:वर्रेर:मा

rang dun bashik dupa

ฆิ:ฉัฐร:ฆๅ

misupa

वार्वा

lelo

Class Ten

क्रुंगर्गुःग

gyundu jawa

वर्षःयः इवाः संश्वः चः च।

dunpa drakpu jawa

श्रासब्द सुंयायाग्रीयाग्रादादया

mitun chok kyi kunne langwa

ऑन : इन : इन : प्रेन : प्रेन

धर् पर्ट्याशयदे हिटा pendokpay shing

শুবা'নশ্বথা'তর'ন্রী'নিদ'। dukngel chen gyi shing

ฎ'ฉ'สาหิฟ'ฉรัมฟ'นา jawa nyi dompa

माल्क र्नेन सुर सुर मा

रटानेशायशासाम्बर्धान्य प्रमुत्ता प्रमुताय। rang nyepe magupar shen duway chupa la lappa

यानस्याया श्रमश्रक्ष्यात्री,श्रमश्रह्मश्री,पश्चीर,ख्रीट,ख्रमाश्राम्,श्राम्,श्राम्,श्राम्,श्राम्,श्राम्,श्राम्,श्राम्,श्र

semchen gyi sem jesu sung shing nyepe mi-gupay chupa la lappa

an'ग्रांश श्रेत'प'द्र'शे श्रेत'परे जिद्र'पर।
se gu jinpa dang mi-jinpay kyepar

नुःनः स्वरः केंग्राराष्ट्रेः केंद्रः नुः त्युर्याः यार्नेदः धरः केंद्रः न्याः क्षेत्रः वा न्याः व्याः व्याः व्य

u jinpar tongway du dang gupa shepa

र्केश प्रवितः दुः हो दुरः प्रवे कुतः पार्यवे त्युका गुःगुतः ह्येत्। chu shedu mi-rungway nyenpapoy lu kyi kunchu

ทน kyi sampay kyepar takpa

gya chenpo la mupa menpa la jarwar mi jawa

ugn'गुः क्रेंद्र'पञ्च क्षेत्र'प्र'द्र्रप्रच्या विद्र'प्राव्य क्षेत्र'प्र'क्ष्र्रप्र'प्र

प्रभाषाश्चित्रायाः भूतायते के हे सूराप्ताया lam lasokpa tunpay tse jitar jawa

> त्रयः नविः गुदः श्चेरः है 'सूरः नुः न। nyelway kunchu jitar jawa



Please cut along the dotted line to make an insert for the binder spine



THIS COURSE USES A 1 INCH BINDER





GUIDE TO THE BODHISATTVA'S WAY OF LIFE-PART 1

COURSE

Level 3 of Middle-Way Philosophy (Madhyamika)

